Your Owner's Manual

Digital version available on the Internet

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

ŠKODA ENYAQ iV 11.2020
Angličtina/English
V1, R1, RoW, en_GB

ŠKODA ENYAQ iV 11.2020 Angličtina/English

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA ENYAQ iV

ŠKODA
SIMPLY CLEVER

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2020

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Date of vehicle delivery _____ / _____ / _____

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Extended warranty

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐ **YES**

☐ **NO**

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or

km: _____

or

Miles: _____

[a)] Depending on which comes first.

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

_____

belongs to: (Title, Name / Company)

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

_____

belongs to: (Title, Name / Company)

_____

Address:

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

Telephone:

Table of Contents

1 Documentation of vehicle delivery

1 Extended warranty

2 Vehicle owner

9 About the Owner's Manual

10 About the Owner's Manual

11 Explanations

12 Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment
12 Application Quick Start Guide

13 Vehicle overviews
13 Front vehicle area
14 Rear vehicle area
14 Driver's seat
15 Centre console and passenger seat
16 Space under the front flap

17 Warning lights
17 Functionality
17 Warning lights overview

22 Correct and safe
22 Introductory notes for correct use
22 New vehicle or new parts
22 Regular checks
23 Improper vehicle adjustments
23 Keep sensors and cameras functional
23 Space under the front flap
23 Handling operating fluids
24 12 volt vehicle battery
24 Notes on the high-voltage system
25 Use electrical sockets in the vehicle
25 Before your journey
25 Sitting safely
26 Correct belt webbing arrangement
26 Correct steering wheel position
26 Securing children properly
27 Transporting objects safely
28 Safe driving
29 Stop the vehicle safely!
29 Exiting the vehicle
29 Deviating weather conditions
30 Emergency call
31 After an accident

33 Keys, locks and alarm system
33 Key
35 Central locking
37 Keyless locking (KESSY)
39 Alarm system

41 Doors, windows and boot lid
41 Doors
41 Child safety lock on the rear doors
42 Window - with electrical operation
44 Sliding/tilting roof
45 Sunblind - with electrical operation
46 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
47 Sun visors
47 Boot lid - with manual operation
48 Boot lid - with electrical control

50 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
51 Unlocking the boot lid

51 Seats, steering wheel and mirror
51 Front seat - with manual operation
52 Front seat - with electrical operation
52 Memory function of the seat
54 Seat massage function
54 Rear seats
55 Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment
55 Park position of rear seat belts
55 Headrests
56 Sleep package
57 Front armrest
57 Rear armrest
57 Load-through device
58 Steering wheel
60 Interior rear-view mirror
60 Wing mirror

62 Restraint systems and airbags
62 Seat belts
64 Child seat
66 Fasteners for child seats
70 Airbags
72 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

73 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
73 Exterior lighting
78 COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting
78 Light Assist high-beam assist system
79 Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system
80 Replace light bulbs
81 Interior lighting
82 Interior ambient light
84 Windscreen wipers and washers

88 Heating and air conditioning system
88 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
92 Stand-by air conditioning
93 Heated windscreen
93 Seat heating
94 Heated steering wheel

95 Driver information system
95 Digital instrument cluster
96 Head-up display with augmented reality
97 Driving data
98 Available mileage
99 Vehicle status
99 Button SET

100 Familiarization with infotainment
100 Infotainment overview
100 HOME menu
101 Preferred functions
101 MENU menu
102 Configuration wizard
102 System
103 Sound

103 Infotainment operation
103 Operation on the screen
104 Keyboard
105 Control Centre
106 Voice control

108 Radio
108 FM Radio
112 DAB radio
114 WEB radio and podcasts

118 Media
118 Player
119 Manage files

124 Mobile device management
124 Mobile device management

127 Telephone
127 Using the phone
128 Manage contacts
129 Telephone conversation
130 Conference call
131 SMS
132 Email
132 Voice mailbox

133 Wi-Fi
133 WLAN use

135 SmartLink
135 Use of SmartLink Function
137 Android Auto
138 Apple CarPlay
140 MirrorLink

141 Navigation
141 Map
144 Find destination
145 Predictive destinations
146 Last destinations
146 Favourites
147 Route guidance
150 Demo mode

151 Online Services
151 ŠKODA Connect
152 ŠKODA Connect application
152 Data connection
153 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
154 Setting personal data protection

155 Starting-off and Driving
155 Switch on the ignition
156 Automatic gearbox
157 Vehicle driving mode
158 Energy recovery
159 Economical driving style
159 Towing a trailer
160 Towing eye and towing procedure
162 Brakes
163 Electric parking brake
165 Auto Hold automatic holding function
165 Electronic engine sound (e-sound)

166 Driver assist systems
166 Braking and stabilising systems
168 Front Assist
169 Pedestrian detection system
170 Speed limiter
171 Cruise control system
172 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
177 Lane Assist

178 Travel Assist
179 Lane change assist system Side Assist
181 Traffic sign recognition
182 Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection
183 Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
184 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
184 Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

185 Park Assist systems
185 Park Pilot parking aid
187 Rear view camera
189 Area View, Top View
191 Rear Traffic Alert
192 Exit warning

193 High-voltage system
193 High-voltage system and high-voltage battery
195 Charging of high-voltage battery
202 Adjust charging in Infotainment
203 Charging cable
204 Universal charging cable

210 Space under the front flap
210 Front flap
211 Coolant

213 12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
213 12 volt vehicle battery
215 Using the jump-starting cable
217 Fuses
218 Fuses in the dash panel
220 Fuses in the space under the front flap

222 Wheels
222 Tyres and rims
224 All-season or winter tires
224 Snow chains
225 SEAL tyres
225 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
227 Breakdown kit
229 Tyre pressure
230 Tyre pressure monitor
231 Wheel bolt cover caps
231 Full wheel frame

232 Storage space and interior equipment
232 Equipment in the boot
232 Emergency equipment
233 Tool kit
233 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
234 Fasteners in the boot
235 Bag hooks in the boot
235 Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot
236 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
236 Fastening nets
236 Net partition
237 Double-sided floor covering
237 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
238 Variable loading floor in the boot
239 Organiser under the variable loading floor
239 Charging cable pocket
240 Interior equipment front
241 Interior equipment rear
242 Storage pocket for phone
242 Car park ticket holder
243 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door

243 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
244 USB-connections
245 Hook on the centre body pillar
245 Pen holder
246 Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card
246 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
246 Storage compartment for an umbrella
247 Phonebox
248 Cup holder
249 Cup holder Easy Open
249 Ashtray
250 Folding table
250 Ceiling
250 Storage compartment for the tablet
251 12-Volt power socket
251 230-Volt power socket
252 230 volt socket and USB connections

252 Roof rack and hitch
252 Roof rack
252 Swivelling hitch

257 Maintaining and cleaning
257 Service events
257 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
258 Interior
260 Exterior
262 Ice scraper

263 Technical data and specifications
263 Requirements for the technical data
263 Vehicle identification data
263 Maximum permissible weights
264 Operating weight
265 Vehicle dimensions
265 Engine specifications
265 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
266 Personal data
266 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
267 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

271 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner’s Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual
Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner’s Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals***

About the Owner's Manual

General points
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner’s Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual
Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner’s Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Explanations

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service Partner” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

“Hold” - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

⚠ **DANGER**

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING**

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

Application Quick Start Guide

Interactive images
In the pictures with the outside of the vehicle and the inside of the vehicle, there are touch points. Tapping a touch point displays a menu with topics or a detailed image.

Symbols
Information about symbols that can be shown on the instrument cluster display. By tapping the symbol, a detailed description is displayed.

Topics
The instruction content is organized according to topics.

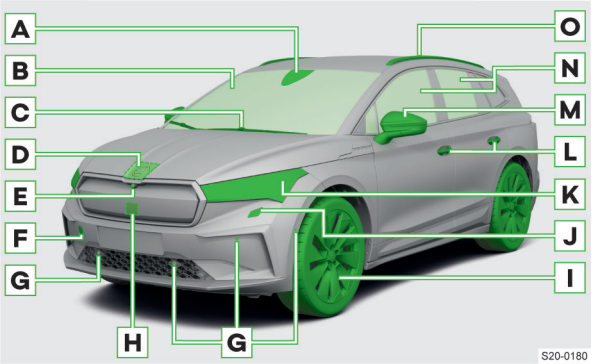
Top bar of the displayed topic

- **A** Title of the topic
- **B** Type of information displayed / display menu with information
- **C** Text search

About the instructions
Language selection for instructions and updates.

Vehicle overviews

Front vehicle area



A Under the windscreen:
- ▶ Camera for assist systems
- ▶ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 73
- ▶ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 84
- ▶ Sensors for humidity and solar radiation

B Windscreen - heating » page 93

C Windscreen wiper – operation » page 84

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap). » page 210

E Camera for assist systems

F Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 160

G Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

H Front radar sensor for assistance systems (under the cover)

I Wheels:
- ▶ Tyres and rims » page 222
- ▶ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 225
- ▶ Breakdown kit » page 227
- ▶ Tyre pressure » page 229
- ▶ Tyre pressure monitor » page 230

J Headlamp cleaning system » page 84

K Headlamp (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▶ Operation » page 74
- ▶ Light Assist high-beam assist system » page 78
- ▶ Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system » page 79
- ▶ Replacing the light bulb » page 80

L Door handle (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▶ Open door » page 41
- ▶ Keyless locking (KESSY)» page 37.

M Outside mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▶ Operation » page 60
- ▶ Camera for assist systems

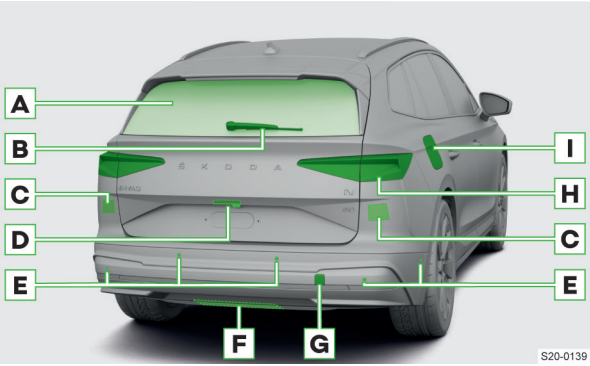
N Side door windows - operation » page 42

O Roof rack » page 252

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 23.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window - heating » page 93

B Rear window wiper and washer - Operation » page 84

C Radar sensors for assist systems (in the bumper)

D Boot lid handle (depending on the vehicle equipment).
- ▸ Manually operated boot lid » page 47
- ▸ Electrically operated boot lid » page 48
- ▸ Camera for assist systems

E Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

F Swivelling tow coupling » page 252

G Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 160

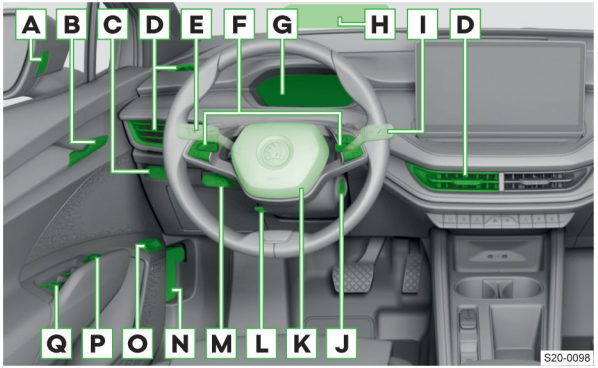
H Tail lights - operation » page 74

I Battery charging flap:
- ▸ Overview of the charging socket » page 196
- ▸ Sticker with tyre pressure values » page 230

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 23.

Driver's seat



A Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 179

B Door opening lever » page 41

C Light switch » page 74

D Air outlet nozzle

E Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):

- ▶ Turn signal and main beam » page 74
- ▶ Speed regulating system » page 172
- ▶ Speed limiter » page 170
- ▶ High beam assist system » page 79
- ▶ Headlight Assist System » page 80

F Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 58

G Digital instrument cluster » page 95

H Representation of the head-up display (on the windscreen) » page 96

I Operating lever:
- ▶ Windscreen wipers and washers » page 84

J Starter button » page 155

K Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag » page 70

L Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 59

M Operation of the automatic distance control » page 174

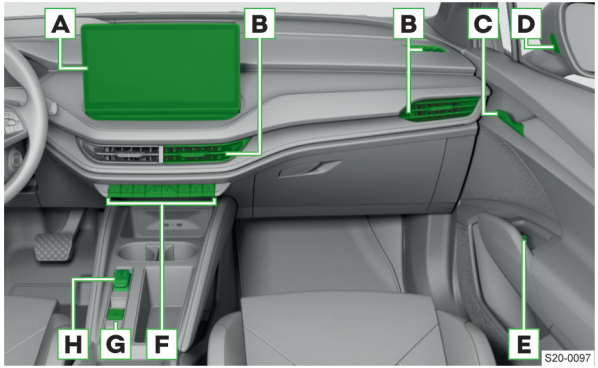
N Unlocking the front flap » page 210

O Button for the electric boot lid » page 48

P Exterior mirror operation » page 60

Q Window operation » page 42.

Centre console and passenger seat



A 13” infotainment » page 100

B Air outlet nozzle

C Door opening lever » page 41

D Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 179

E Window operation in the passenger door » page 42

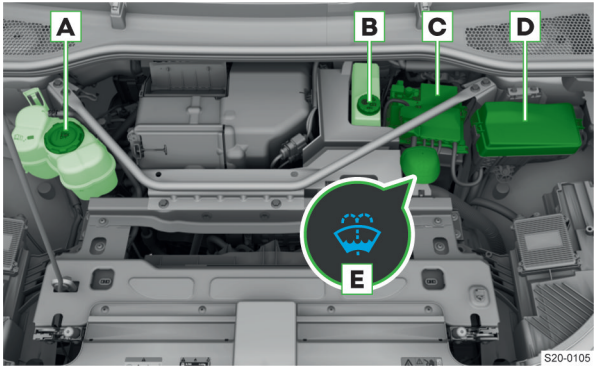
F Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):
- ▶ SET Quick access to the settings of specific vehicle systems (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - ▶ Interior monitoring » page 40
  - ▶ Tyre pressure monitor » page 230
  - ▶ Access to other vehicle settings

- Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems
- MODE Driving mode selection » page 157
- ASSIST Menu with Park Assist systems » page 185
- Button for hazard warning light system » page 74
- Central locking » page 35
- CLIMA Display of the air conditioner operating screen in the Infotainment screen » page 89
- MAX Quick ventilation/defrosting of the windscreen
- REAR Heated rear window » page 93

G Button (P) - parking brake » page 163

H Automatic gearbox selector lever » page 156

Space under the front flap



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 211

B Brake fluid reservoir » page 162

C 12 volt vehicle battery » page 213

D Fuse box » page 220

E Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 86

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**
Disregarding the lighting up of the warning lights and the associated messages on the display of the instrument cluster can lead to accidents, serious injuries or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights
The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ - Hazard

⚠ - Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

For further details » page 17, *Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 17.
	Unfastened seat belts at the front and rear » page 62.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » page 214.
	Inadequate mileage » page 98.
	Coolant level is too low » page 212.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 163.
	Electromechanical brake booster faulty » page 168.
	Together with (ABS) - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 168.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 164.
	Parking brake on » page 163.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 59.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 59.
	Take control immediately » page 178.

Symbol	Meaning
	Fault in electric drive system » page 195.
	illuminated along with - Electrical system overheated » page 195.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 168.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 173.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 17.
	Low state of charge of the high-voltage battery » page 200.
	Limited mileage » page 98.
	Fault / low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery » page 214, » page 215, » page 215.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 87.
	Bulb faulty » page 77.
	No light is switched on » page 74.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 75.
	Parking brake error » page 164.

Symbol	Meaning
	Along with - Recuperation error » page 159.
	Electronic engine noise failed » page 166.
	Fault in electric drive system » page 195.
ABS	ABS faulty » page 168.
	Worn brake pads » page 163.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 231.
	Tyre pressure change » page 224, » page 230.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 59.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 60.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 59.
	KESSY - no key found » page 39.
	KESSY - problem with turning on the ignition » page 156.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 158.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 195.

Symbol	Meaning
ON	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 72.
	flashes together with OFF - Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty » page 73.
OFF	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 72.
	Airbag system faulty » page 71.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 183.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 71.
	Ball rod not locked » page 255.
	Illuminates - ESC or ASR faulty » page 168.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 166.
OFF	Front Assist deactivated » page 169.
	Front Assist not available » page 169.
	ACC not available » page 176.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 177.
	Turn signal light, left » page 75, » page 77.

Symbol	Meaning
	Rear seat belt fastened » page 62.
	Turn signal light, right » page 75, » page 77.
1	Trailer turn signal light » page 77.
	Automatic gearbox locked » page 156.
AUTO HOLD	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 165.
	The high-voltage battery is charged » page 198.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 177.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 173.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 172.
	Travel Assist activated » page 178.
	Travel Assist activated - the cruise control is active » page 178.
	Travel Assist activated - the lane guidance is active » page 178.
	Low outside temperature » page 28.

Symbol	Meaning
	High beam or flasher activated » page 74.
	High beam assistant switched on - high beam is switched on » page 79.
	Headlight assistant switched on - high beam is switched on » page 80.
AUTO HOLD	Auto Hold is activated » page 165.
	Unoccupied rear seat » page 62.
	Bad weather light switched on » page 75.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 79.
	Headlight assistant switched on » page 80.
	Take control » page 178.
	Service event » page 257.
! LIM	Speed limiter faulty » page 171.
LIM	Speed limiter activated » page 170.
	ACC activated » page 173.

Symbol	Meaning
OFF	ACC deactivated » page 173.
	Speed limiter deactivated » page 170.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 174.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 174.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 174.
km/h	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 173.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 172.
	Cruise control activated » page 172.
	Front Assist is started » page 169.
	Safety distance too small » page 168.
	Break recommendation » page 183.
	Driving mode Normal » page 157.
	Driving mode Eco » page 157.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 157.

Symbol	Meaning
MODE	Individual Driving Mode » page 157.
	Sport Driving Mode » page 157.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the prescribed operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle » page 265 can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New brake pads
New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres
New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?
A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?

- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no stains or operating fluids under the vehicle?
- Components of the high-voltage system, for example the orange-coloured high-voltage cable, are undamaged?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.

Keep sensors and cameras functional

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the functioning of the sensors and cameras.

- Do not cover or stick over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.
- If you suspect damaged sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist company.

Space under the front flap

Before opening the front flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the front flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.

When working in the space under the front flap

- Keep children away from the space under the front flap.
- Follow the safety instructions listed in the chapter relating to the high-voltage system » page 193, *What you should be mindful of*.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system and in the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke near the vicinity of the front flap and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any objects in the space under the front flap.

Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. It consists of battery acid from the 12 volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- Do not check and use operating fluids with the ignition switched on.
- In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.

- Store cloths soiled by brake fluids in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery
The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Notes on the high-voltage system

⚠ **DANGER**
Improper handling of the high-voltage system and battery can result in burns, injuries or fatal electric shock.

- It must always be assumed that the high-voltage battery is charged and that the high-voltage system is live. This also applies when the electric drive is switched off and the ignition is switched off.
- The components of the high-voltage system, e.g. the high-voltage cables and the high-voltage battery, neither catch on nor touch with the help of objects.
- Do not carry out any work on the high-voltage system or the high-voltage battery.
- Work on the high-voltage system and the systems influenced by it may only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
- Do not open or repair the components of the high-voltage system.
- Do not replace, remove or disconnect the orange high-voltage cables.
- Do not open, replace, or remove the cover of the high-voltage battery.
- Damage to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery can result in the escape of toxic and flammable gases. Open the windows to ensure that any gases are vented and exit the vehicle.
- Avoid contact with liquids and gases coming from the high-voltage battery.
- In the event of fire, leave the vehicle and stay at a safe distance. Inform rescuers about the fact that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.» page 31, *After an accident*.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
A vehicle with an electric drive generates low operating noise when driving. It may not be noticed by other road users.

Use electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of the sockets may lead to life-threatening electric shock or a fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch warm sockets.
- Protect sockets from liquids.
- If moisture does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

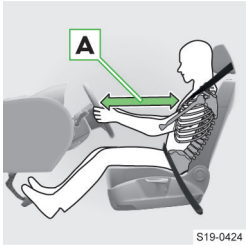
Before you go

- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Close all doors, the boot and front flap.
- Stop the charging process and close the battery charging flap.
- Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed:

- Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- Keep your feet in the footwell.
- Use the entire seat.
- Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- Do not hold your limbs out the window.



› Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.
› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

▶ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
▶ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
▶ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
▶ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
▶ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
▶ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
▶ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position

▶ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

Securing children properly

▶ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
▶ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 65.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag

The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat

There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

- Transport objects securely.
- Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.

- Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it, so that it cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

- Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Lights up when the outside temperature is low ❄ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer

The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

- Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
- Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water

Water must not enter the vehicle systems!

- Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.

- Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

- Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
- Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

- For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

› Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

- Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
- At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
- When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 35.

Deviating weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, 12 volt vehicle battery replacement, etc.).

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

⚠ **WARNING**
This emergency service is only available in some countries.

⚠ **WARNING**
If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Functionality

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

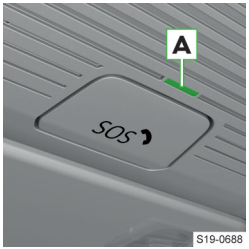
Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident - automatic call
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist assistant system has intervened.

Minor accident - call option
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light



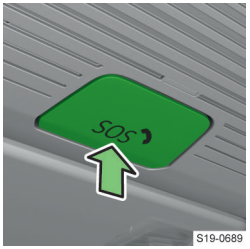
The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A.

- Green - lit up - the system is functional
- Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre
- Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage
- Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage

⚠ **WARNING**
If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

Operation

Manual call



S19-0689

The emergency button is located below the cap with the icon SOS.

› To **open** the cap, press on it.
› To **close** the cap, press on it until it clicks into place.

S19-0872

› Press and hold the SOS button under the flap.
› Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
› To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Put on the reflective vest.
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the accident to the emergency services and inform them that it concerns a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

ⓘ If the airbags or the belt tensioners trigger in the event of an accident, the high-voltage system is automatically deactivated at the same time.

Safety systems

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

▸ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
▸ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Put on the reflective vest.
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.

› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the fire to the emergency services and inform them that it concerns a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

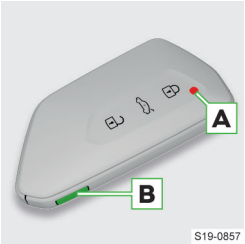
⚠ **WARNING**

▶ Do not try to extinguish the fire yourself.
▶ Do not stand close to the burning vehicle.

Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key Overview



- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- A Battery status warning light
- B Locking tab for removal of the key bit

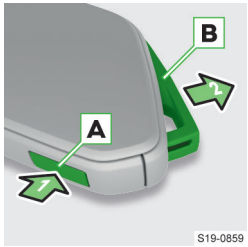
NOTICE

▸ Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

▸ Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key bit



› Press securing tab A. The pendant part B of the key bit folds out.

› Press the securing tab A again.

› Remove the key bit.

Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

▸ After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

▶ A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.

› Replace the battery » page 34.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

▶ The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » page 34.

▶ The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows:

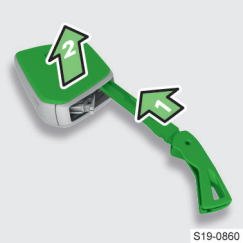
› Press any button on the key.

› Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 37.

ⓘ If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.



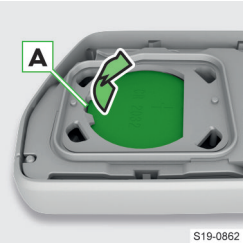
S19-0860

› Remove the key bit and partially insert it into the opening.

› Press down on the key fob to release the top cover.

S19-0861

› Open the battery cover.



S19-0862

› Insert a thin screwdriver into the recess A and remove the battery.

› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.

› Insert the new battery.

› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of death!
If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.
▶ Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
▶ If the battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system
The system simultaneously unlocks and locks all doors, the charging socket cover and the boot lid.

Unlock indicator: double flashing of the indicator lights.

Lock indicator: single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

ⓘ If no door is opened within 45 seconds after unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.
If the handle of the boot lid is not pressed within 120 s, the lid automatically locks again.

SAFE function
Depending on the equipment, the central locking system can include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
▶ No people are allowed in the locked vehicle with the SAFE function.

Turn off the SAFE function
▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▶ Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring » page 40, *Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Ways in which central locking operates
Depending upon vehicle equipment:
▶ Key » page 33
▶ Keyless locking (KESSY)» page 37.

▶ Central locking button

Lock/unlock using the central locking button

› The button in the middle part of the control panel.

The symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks/unlocks all of the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle is also unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

⚠ **WARNING**

A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .

› Select *Central locking* .

All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the battery charging flap.

Single door

Using the button on the key, the driver's door and the battery charging flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the battery charging flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

Using the button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the battery charging flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

▶ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.

▶ Then it lights up continuously.

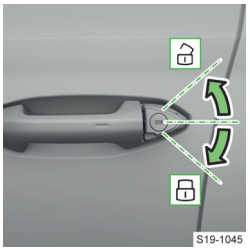
▶ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder

Remove the cover
- Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
- Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
- Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.



Locking and unlocking
- Insert the removed key bit with the pendant facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder, then unlock or lock it.

Install cover
- Pull on the door handle and hold it.
- Replace the cover.
- Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder

- Open the door.
- For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
- Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking (KESSY)

Usage

The keyless locking system, KESSY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

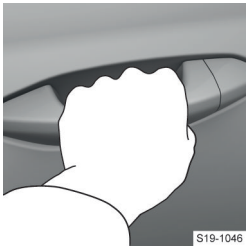
Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

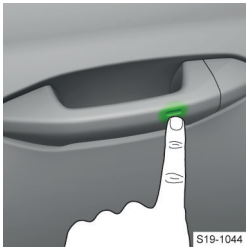
ⓘ The recess on the door handle is also present on vehicles without the keyless locking system.

Release



› Grab the door handle.
› Open the door.

Lock



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid can be opened within 2 minutes.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanently deactivate keyless locking

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .
› Select *Central locking* > *Keyless Access* .

Activate / deactivate automatic unlocking when the key approaches the vehicle

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⠿ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .

› Select *Central locking* › *Unlock the vehicle when approaching* .

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

ⓘ If single door locking or unlocking of the doors on one side of the vehicle is set, there is no vehicle unlocking when the key approaches the rear of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.

› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.

› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs:

▶ Opening the front flap
▶ Opening the boot lid
▶ Opening the door
▶ Manipulation of the ignition lock
▶ Towing the vehicle
▶ Movement in the vehicle
▶ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
▶ Uncoupling the trailer
▶ Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

▶ Interior monitoring
▶ Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function » page 35, *Functionality*.

Deactivation

▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▶ In the Infotainment system, in the menu: ▦ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Central locking* .
› Select *Central locking* and deactivate the interior monitoring by moving the slider to the left.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

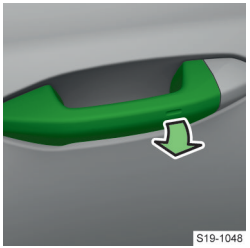
ⓘ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

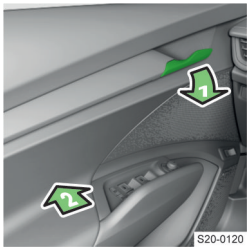
Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

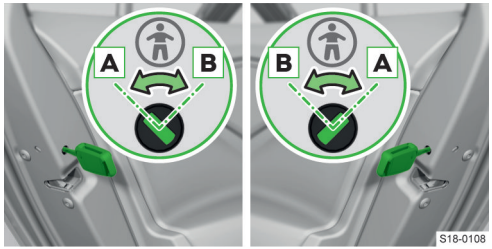
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Switching on and off



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Electrically operated child lock

› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

Window - with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

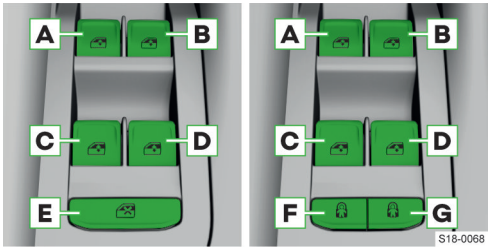
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

▸ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- **A** Front left window
- **B** Front right window
- **C** Rear left window
- **D** Rear right window
- **E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors

F Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) » page 41, *Operation*

G Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) » page 41, *Operation*

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system > > > *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the window operation menu item.

› Select the menu item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing
The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery
› Enable window operation » page 44.

Activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Activate automatic window operation
› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If the operation is activated in the closed direction and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, the movement of the glass pane is stopped and the pane moves back a few centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limit is disabled when you try to close again by moving and holding a finger in the closed direction (if the time span between the closing attempts is less than 5 s). The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.
▸ Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation

Opening

› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing

› Move forwards using your finger.

Stop/restore the movement of the sliding/tilting roof

› To **stop** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, press ⏏.

› To **restore** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, move your finger in the desired direction.

Open/slide back the sliding/tilting roof

› To **open** or **slide back** the sliding/tilting roof, press ⏏.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof

The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› Press and hold the button 🔓 to **turn it off**.

› Press and hold the button 🔒 to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door » page 37.

Sunblind - with electrical operation

Operation

Opening

› Move backwards using your finger.

Closing

› Move forwards using your finger.

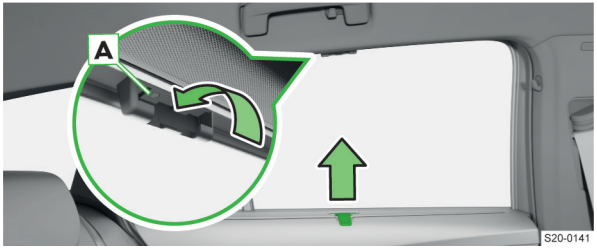
Stop/restore the movement of the roller blind

› To **stop** the movement of the roller blind, press .

› To **restore** the movement of the roller blind, move your finger in the desired direction.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation



Brightness protection

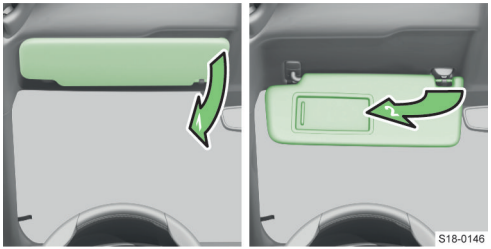
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen

2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ **CAUTION**
Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.
▸ Do not attach anything to the sun visor.

Boot lid - with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▸ Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

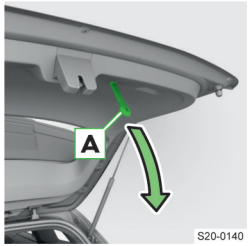
Operation

Opening

› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Grasp the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!
▸ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid - with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

- Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

CAUTION
Risk of injury!
- Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

CAUTION
Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!
- Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

NOTICE
- Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
- Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

The rear parking light flashing twice indicates that the flap is closed.

Handle in the tailgate

› Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate

› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door

› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.

› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.

› To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or release the button.

Button on the key

› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

ⓘ The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 51.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

NOTICE

▸ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

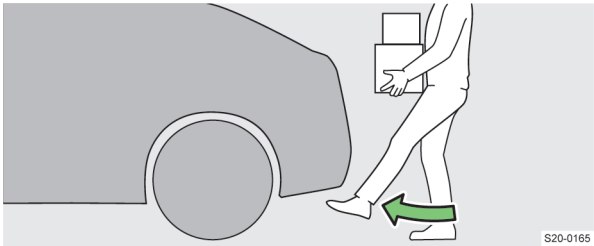
Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition off.
✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



› Stand in the middle behind the bumper.
› Move one foot quickly under the bumper and remove it again.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

Display of the opening/ closing process
The rear turn signal lights light up when the lid is opened and closed. When you close the lid, audible signals are additionally sounded.

Stopping/ restoring lid movement
The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

▸ Downpour
▸ Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activating and deactivating
The function is activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment ⠿ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *"Easy Open"* .
› Select *"Easy Open"* .

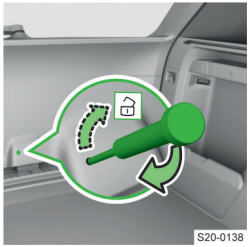
We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

▸ Installation of a roof rack
▸ Coupling a trailer or another accessory to the hitch
▸ Car wash
▸ Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.

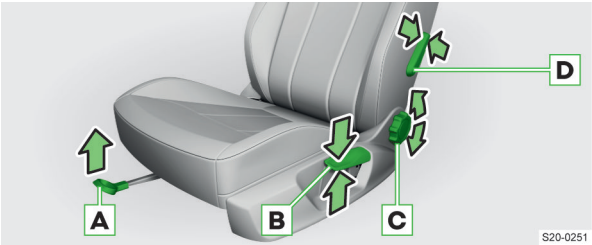


› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
› Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat - with manual operation

Controls on the seat



A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place

B Adjusting the height

C Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

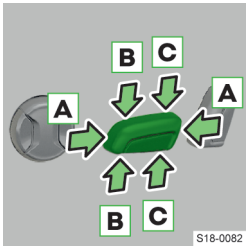
D Adjusting the lumbar support: Extent of the curvature

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Front seat - with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat

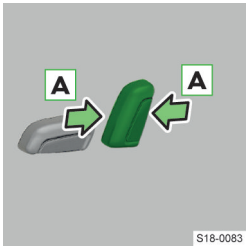


A Adjust in a longitudinal direction

B Adjust the inclination

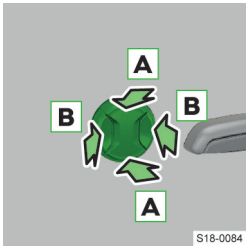
C Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



A Adjust the inclination

Adjusting the lumbar support



A Set the position of the curvature

B Set the extent of the curvature

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.

› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

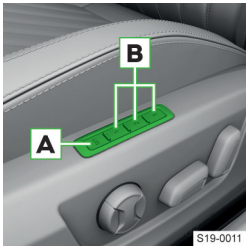
Or:

› Press the button on the key.

› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



› Turn on the ignition.

› Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.

› Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

› Turn on the ignition.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .

› Select *Mirror* and activate the mirror's fold function.

› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.

› Engage reverse gear.

› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Seat massage function

Turn on/turn off

› Press the button.

Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

⚠ **CAUTION**

▸ Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

Rear seats

Folding down the seat backs

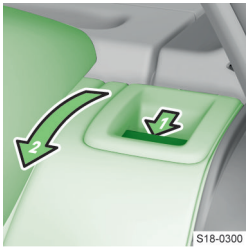
Before folding down

› Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.

› Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.

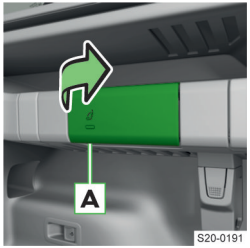
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

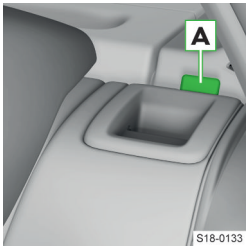
Folding forwards from the boot



› Pull the lever in the area A.

The seat back is unlocked and partly folded forwards.

Folding back up



› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

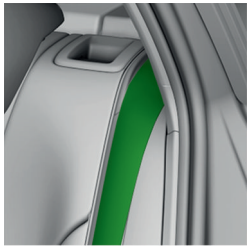
› Fold the seat backrest back up.

The release handle must audibly click into place.

› Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin A must not be visible.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment

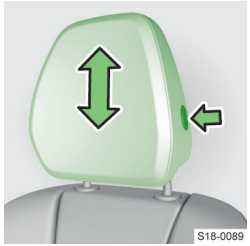
Park position of rear seat belts



Headrests

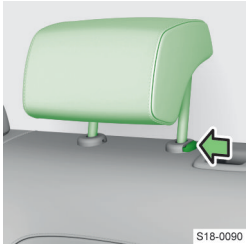
Adjusting the headrests

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests



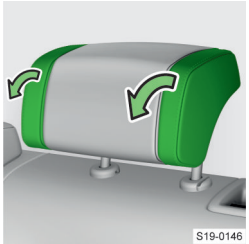
› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest

The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement , e.g. when sleeping.

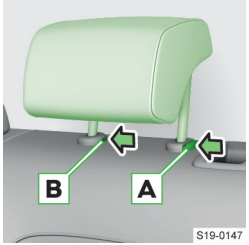
› Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.



› Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press safety buttons A and B at the same time and remove the support.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Sleep package

The package includes folding side bolsters for the headrest and a bag with a blanket.

Front armrest

Settings

Adjusting the height
› Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

Folding down
› Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!
▸ The front armrest must be folded down while driving or raised in one of the locking positions.

Rear armrest

Settings

› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Load-through device

Open and close

Open from the passenger compartment

› Press the lid in the upper area and pull on the handle.
› Open the lid.

Open from the luggage compartment

› Press the store button.
› Open the lid.

Closing

› Fold back the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks into place.

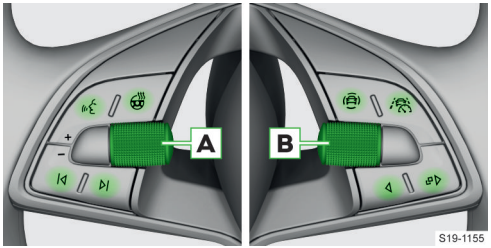
After closing, the red mark on the back of the cover above the safety button must not be visible.

⚠ **WARNING**

▸ The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis in a secured through-loading bag.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



Switch voice control on/off

Heated steering wheel » page 94

A **Rotate** - Adjust the volume
Press - Switch the sound off/on

Switch to the next track/station played

Switch to the previous track/station played

Show menu of set assistance systems

Switching the Travel Assist assistance system on / off » page 178

B **Rotate** - choose between menu items in the assistance systems menu under the button
Press - Confirm the menu item in the assistance systems menu

Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 95

Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 95

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

› Swing the safety lever downwards.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates - total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, restart the ignition and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

› Turn off the ignition, restart the ignition and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

flashes

Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

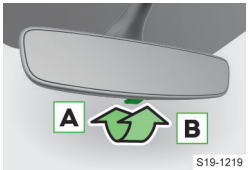
› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.

› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened

B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the ignition is switched on.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of an accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

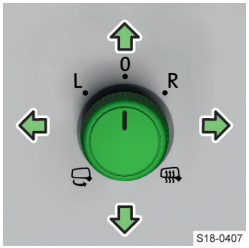
▸ Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror

0 Switch off operation

R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror

Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position)

Heat the mirror with the ignition on

Adjusting the mirror surface

› Select position L or R.

› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

ⓘ Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously
If this function is activated, the mirror surface of the passenger mirror is also set when the mirror surface of the driver's mirror is set.

Mirror with memory function
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat » page 53.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » page 53 stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

Operating conditions
✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
✓ The mirror position is saved.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The adjustment knob is in the R position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
▶ Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of mirror damage!
▶ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences (e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring), fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out as follows:

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⊞ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirror* .
› Select *Mirror* and perform activation or deactivation.

Troubleshooting

Electric mirror operation impaired
› Adjust the mirror surface by pressing it lightly with your finger.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burns!
▶ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

⚠ **WARNING**

- ▶ The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- ▶ If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- ▶ If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- ▶ Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- ▶ Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ **WARNING**

- ▶ If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » page 182.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

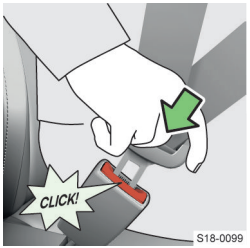
illuminated – a front and rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up - rear seat not occupied

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

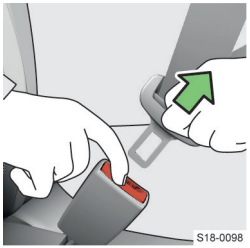
Operation

Fastening the seat belt



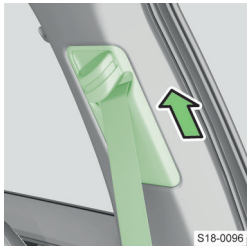
- Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

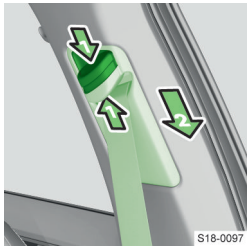


- Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



- Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



- Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
- After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor

- Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly.
- Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
- Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
- If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
- If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please note the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Use child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with the test symbol: large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They satisfy the standard ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129.

⚠ **WARNING**

- When installing the child seat on the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When installing the child seat, avoid contact between the roof and the rear pillar. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top edge of the headrest.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:

A Sticker on the passenger sun visor

B Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 72.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ **WARNING**

- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ (up to 13 kg)	Britax Römer	Baby Safe Plus i-Size	ISOFIX and Isofix base frame	0001990 6T	129R00/0 5 0008

Group	Manufac-turer	Type	Attach-ment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
1 (9-18 kg)	Britax Rö-mer	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	0001990 6AA	44R04/15 301133
2-3 (15-36 kg)	Britax Rö-mer	Kidfix² R [a)]	ISOFIX	0001990 6AB	44R04/14 301304

Group	Manufac-turer	Type	Attach-ment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
[a)] For optimal protection, it is recommended to use this child seat including the back section and lap belt guide element SecureGuard.					

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16.

Child seats with the ISOFIX system

Group	Size category of child seat [a]	Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
		With activated front airbag [b]	With deactivated front airbag [b]	Outer seats [b]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL	IL	X
1 (9-18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF	IL IUF	X
2 (15-25 kg)	-	IUF	IL	IL	X
3 (22-36 kg)	-	IUF	IL	IL	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.
[b] The seat is suitable for the fixing system ISO/R3.

IL The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX system.

i-Size

Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag	With deactivated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

i-UF The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats of the “Universal” category.

i-UF The seat is suitable for forward- and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the “Universal” category.

X The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats of the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Group	Front passenger’s seat		Rear seats	
	With activated front air-bag [a)]	With deactivated front air-bag [a)]	Outer seats	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U	U	U
1 (9-18 kg)	UF	U	U	U
2 (15-25 kg)	UF	U	U	U
3 (22-36 kg)	UF	U	U	U
[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.				

U The seat is suitable for the child seat category “Universal” and is permitted for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal”category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

ISOFIX

⚠ **WARNING**

- On the retaining eyelets that are used to install the child seat with the ISOFIXSystem provided, do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats and possibly on the front passenger seat.

A child seat that uses the ISOFIXsystem can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.

› Fold back the covers before installing the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ **WARNING**

- Child seats with the TOP TETHER- Only use the system on the seats with the eyelets TOP TETHERSymbol are provided.
- Only attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye TOP TETHER-Fasten the system.
- When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER- No other object may be attached to the eyelet TOP TETHERSystem.

Holding eyelets on the rear seats

Holding eyelet on the passenger seat

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat. The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats A, if required on the passenger seat.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » page 70.

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » page 72.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

ⓘ As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident
Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of serious or fatal injuries!
- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the central airbag!
- The front armrest must be folded down while driving or raised in one of the locking positions.

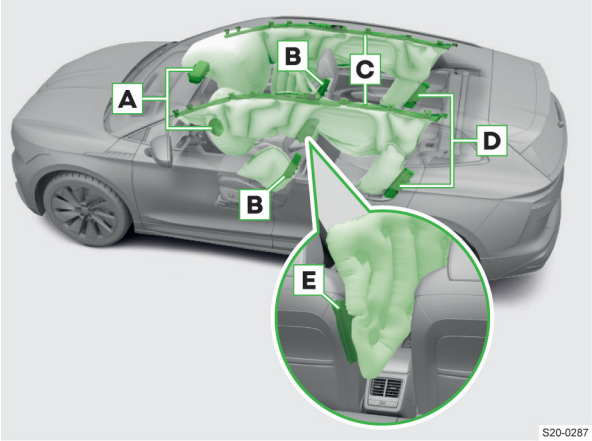
In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:

- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering AIRBAG.



A Front airbags

B Side airbags - front

C Head airbags

D Side airbags - rear

E Central airbag between the driver and front passenger seats

⚠ **WARNING**

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
- Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

Deactivating the airbags

We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » page 72, *Operation*by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below:

- If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
- Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ **WARNING**

If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty

illuminates

Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example:

▸ A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.

▸ The minimum distance to the control panel cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!
▸ Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!
▸ After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag
› Remove the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
› To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
› Remove the key bit from the slot.
› Close the passenger door.

› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Warning lights

▸ After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
▸ If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
▸ One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

ON lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF.
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

Daylight running lights
The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

ⓘ In vehicles for certain markets, this also provides lighting for the rear area of the vehicle.

Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.

Automatically switch lights on/off
The light is automatically switched on or off according to the given lighting conditions and vehicle operation (standstill/travel).

Some of the following lighting functions turn on/off automatically:
▸ Dipped beam and parking lights
▸ Daylight running lights

Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.

The automatic dipping and parking light switching is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Full LED Headlights
When the light switch is in mode AUTO, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle. The **Dy-**

namic cornering light function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

When no light is switched on
The control light ☼ may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

☼ illuminates

› Switch on the light.

Operation

Light modes

The light mode can be selected using the switch ☼.

› Press the ☼ switch repeatedly and select the desired mode.

The information of selected mode is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster display.

The menu with available light modes varies depending on the given lighting conditions and the vehicle operation (standstill/drive).

▶ AUTO - **Automatic mode**

Automatic switching on/off of dipped, parking or daytime running lights.

In the light switch, is illuminated AUTO. Even if the dipped beam is automatically turned on, the switch also lights up ≡D.

▶ ≡D - **Dipped beam**

Turning on the dipped beam.

In the light switch, is illuminated ≡D.

▶ ≡D - **Sidelights**

Switching on the sidelights.

In the light switch, is illuminated ≡D.

▶ OFF - **Light turned off**

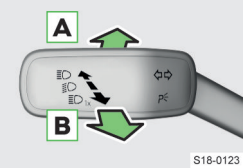
Turn off the light.

There is no green warning light in the light switch.

ⓘ After switching on the ignition, the AUTO mode is automatically set.

ⓘ Switching on the parking light and switching off the light is only possible when the vehicle is stationary or driving at a speed of max. 10 km/h up to a distance of max. 100 m. When one of the values is exceeded, automatic driving light switching takes place.

High beam and headlight flasher
The high beam works when the low beam is on.



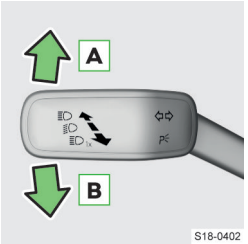
A Switch on high beam

B Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster ≡D.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

B Switching on the turn signal light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

Turn signal - convenience signalling

Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Bad weather light

The bad weather light provides better illumination of the road in unfavorable visibility conditions where the standard light loses its effectiveness.

› Turn on the bad weather light switch.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates and information about the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

Rear fog light

› Switch on the switch for rear fog light.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates and information about the selected light mode is briefly displayed.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

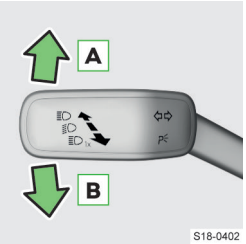
Hazard warning light system

› Press the button to switch on or off in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

One-sided parking light
The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.



A Switch on the sidelights on the right
B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.
› Move the lever to the appropriate position.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Double-sided parking light
The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

› Turn on the ignition.
› Choose light mode.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating the automatic headlights system in rain
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and activate or deactivate the function of the automatic driving light switch function when it rains.

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Comfort flasher* .

Headlamp levelling, LED headlights
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu > > > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* .

› Select the menu item for headlight range control.
› Adjust the headlight range using the slider. The headlight range must correspond to the vehicle's load.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can be used.

ⓘ For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.
▸ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Activate / deactivate the dynamic cornering lights function
Applies to full LED headlights.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⊞ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic
Applies to full LED headlights.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⊞ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .
› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Travel mode:* .

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective
› Check the turn signal light on the right.

flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective
› Check the turn signal light on the left.

1 does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective
› Check the trailer lighting.

Light bulb or LED bulb is defective

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears in the display regarding the defective lights.
› Replace the defective bulb.
› In case of a defective LED bulb, contact a specialist garage for help.

The headlights are misted up on the inside
Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit
› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened
Headlight defective.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective
If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

ⓘ For vehicles with Full LED headlights and keyless locking system (KESSY) with activated automatic unlocking function, the lights are switched on automatically when the key is approached.

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.

Settings

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ▦ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Comfort light* .
› Select *Comfort light* select and set the speed limit.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the COMING HOME function can be activated/deactivated.

Light Assist high-beam assist system

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

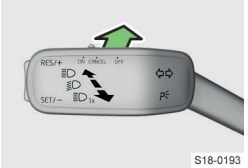
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▶ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster ≣Ⓐ from the isolation box.

When the assist system switches the main beam on automatically, it lights up in the instrument cluster ≣Ⓐ from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

▸ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

▸ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ▦ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Light Assist* .

Dynamic Light Assist headlight assist system

Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

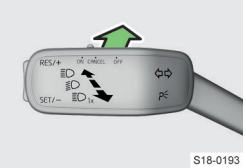
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is located in mode AUTO.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster ≣D from the isolation box.

When the assist system switches the main beam on automatically, it lights up in the instrument cluster ≣D from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

▸ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

▸ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⠿ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Headlights* .

› Select *Headlights* and actiavte or deactivate the function *Dynamic Light Assist* .

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

DIY replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

NOTICE

Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!

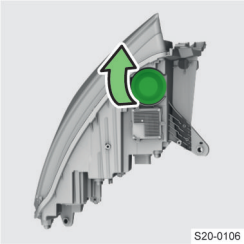
▸ Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

✓ Ignition off

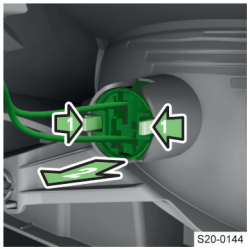
✓ Light switched off

Front turn signal

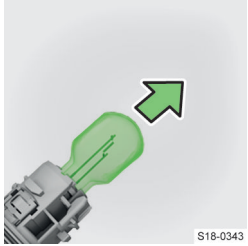


Left headlight (top view)

› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Press the locking lugs and remove the base with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the bulb into the headlight until the locking lugs engage.
› Fit the protective cap on the headlight again.

Interior lighting

Operation

Switching on automatically
The lighting switches on when one of the following events occurs.

- The vehicle is unlocked
- One of the doors is opened
- The ignition is switched off

Automatic switch off
The lighting switches off when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is locked
- The ignition is switched on
- About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

Operation of the lighting
Turn the front and rear lights on/off

OFF Deactivation of automatic activation
(OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the corresponding light.

The brightness level of the lighting can be adjusted by holding a finger on the light. The set brightness level is not saved once the lighting is switched off.

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting
The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Turn on the lighting for the make-up mirror in the sun visors on the windscreen
› Slide off the cover of the make-up mirror.

Settings

Switch and instrument lighting
Adjusting the brightness of the switch and instrument lighting is done in Infotainment in one of the following ways:

› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

A window showing the slider for setting the brightness level opens.

› Adjust the brightness level using the slider.

Or:

› The menu ▦ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the interior lighting menu item.
› Select the menu item for the interior lighting and adjust the brightness level using the slider.

Footwell lighting
Applies to vehicles that do not have the background lighting.

› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ▦ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the interior lighting menu item.
› Select the menu item for the interior lighting and adjust the brightness level using the slider.

In vehicles with background lighting, the footwell lighting is part of the interior background lighting » page 83, *Settings*.

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

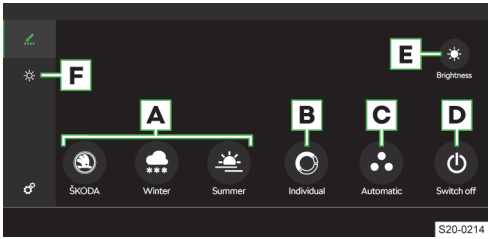
When the vehicle is locked, the lighting briefly turns red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the lighting briefly turns green. When

one of the doors is opened, the respective door light is illuminated in red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

The ambient lighting is set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu ▦ > ☀.

Pre-selection options for background lighting



A Factory-set pre-selection options
- ▸ Only the general brightness level of the lighting is adjustable.

B User-selectable pre-selection option
- ▸ The lighting colour can be adjusted together for the dash panel and door area, as well as independently for the centre console. The footwell lighting is available only in white color.
- ▸ The brightness level for the lighting can be set independently for the control panel, door and centre console area as well as the footwell.

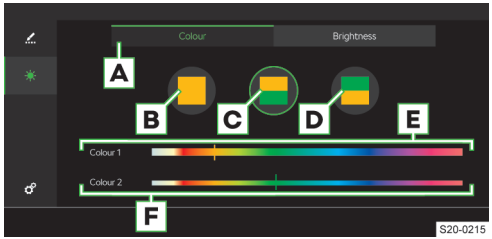
C Automatic selection option
- ▸ The colour and the brightness will change automatically depending on the selected driving mode.

D Turn off the lights

E Settings for the general brightness level

F Setting the colours and the brightness level for the pre-selection option

Setting the colour for the selection options



A Tab for adjusting the lighting colour

B Option for uniform illumination colour
- ▸ The colour is set using the slider E.

C Option for two-colour lighting
- ▸ Use the slider bar E to set the colour for the dash panel and door area.
- ▸ Use the slider bar F to set the colour for the centre console.

D Option for two-colour lighting

▸ The colour for the dash panel and door area is replaced with the colour for the centre console.

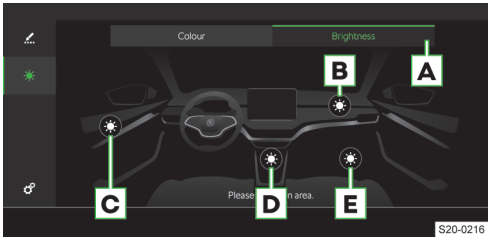
E Slider for adjusting the illumination colour

F Slider for adjusting the illumination colour

Adjustment process

› Choose the preset option ◯.
› Select the tab for setting the lighting colour.
› Choose whether to set a uniform lighting colour, if necessary, a different colour for the dash panel and door area and a different colour for the centre console.
› Set the desired lighting colour using the sliders.

Setting the brightness level for the selection options ◯



A Tab for setting the brightness level

B Setting the brightness level for the control panel area

C Setting the brightness level for the door area

D Setting the brightness level for the centre console

E Setting the brightness level for the footwell

Adjustment process

› Choose the preset option ◯.
› Select the tab for setting the brightness level.
› Select the area for which the brightness level should be set.
› Set the desired brightness level using the slider.

Windscreen wipers and washers

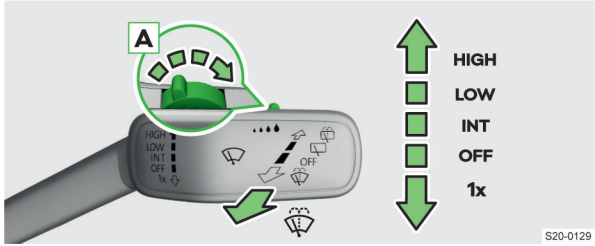
Operating conditions

✓ Front flap closed
✓ Boot lid closed
✓ Ignition on

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
▸ Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- ▶ Intermittent wiping
- ▶ Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

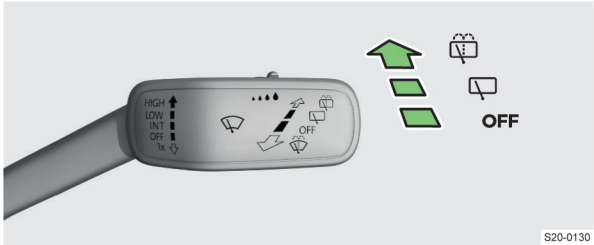
Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically.

If the driver or front passenger door is opened while the vehicle is stationary with the windscreen wipers switched on, the wiping process is interrupted. If the door is closed within a few seconds and the windscreen wiper lever is moved, the wiping process will continue.

Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:
- ▶ Washing and wiping the windscreen
- ▶ Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping

If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping
The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated or deactivated as in the Infotainment system.

› The menu ⁞⁞⁞ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Select *Mirrors and wipers* .
› Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

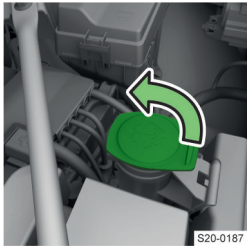
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!
▸ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the headlights!
▸ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

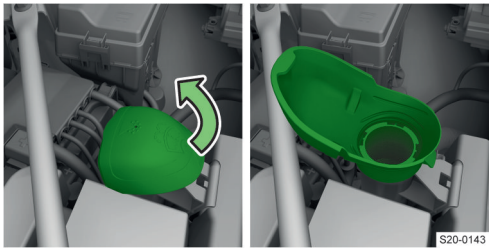
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to parts in the area under the front flap!
▸ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the area under the front flap » page 16.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 6 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



Sealing cap of the tank - variant 1



Sealing cap of the tank - variant 2

› Open the front flap » page 210.
› Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
› Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

NOTICE

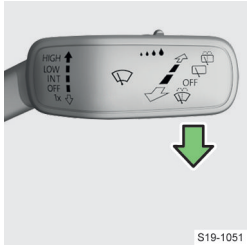
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the front flap!

▸ Close the front flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

▸ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position - using the operating lever

› Switch the ignition on and off again.



› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position - using the Infotainment system

› The menu ⊞ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Outside* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Mirrors and wipers* .

› Select *Mirrors and wipers* and then select the service position of the windscreen wiper arms.

ℹ After switching off the ignition, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the windscreen wiper arms can be set to folding position.

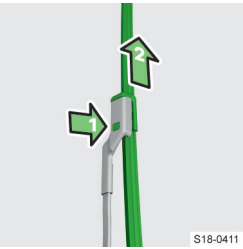
Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of accident!

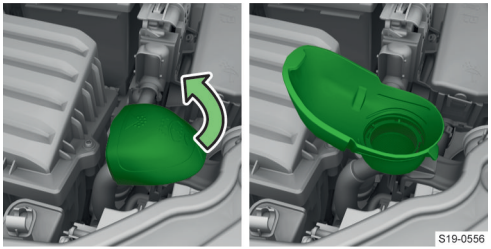
▸ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



Heating and air conditioning system

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

▶ We recommend keeping the internal temperature at most 5 °C lower than the external temperature.
▶ We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
▶ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!
▶ Always keep the fan on.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
▶ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Functionality

Smart and classic air conditioning
Smart air conditioning is an automatic mode with preset selection options.

The classic air conditioning system enables the individual functions to be set.

Automatic mode
Automatic mode keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Cooling system
When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Recirculated air mode
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Air Care
The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Air Care* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

When the Air Care function surface turns green, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

When the Air Care function surface turns white, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

ⓘ After the function is switched off, the function surface *Air Care* lights up green for a certain time.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 ° C
✓ Ignition on
✓ Fan switched on

Operation

Menu for operating the air conditioning
› Press CLIMA under Infotainment.

The following menu is displayed:

	Display smart air conditioning with pre-determined preset options
	Show classic settings for the air conditioning
≈	Air Care
	Further settings for air conditioning

ⓘ After it is switched on, the air conditioning is started according to the settings, before it is switched off.

Settings

Set smart air conditioning
› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

Depending on the equipment, a menu with a number of the following functions is displayed:

CLIMA OFF	Switch air conditioning on or off
Front	Show the front settings
Rear	Show the rear settings

- Preselect option for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen
- Preselect option for the flow of warm air into the footwell
- Preselect option for the flow of warm air in the hand area and switching on the steering wheel heating
- Preselect option for the flow of cold air into the footwell
- Preselect option for the flow of external air into the interior
- Preselect option for a short-term increase in heating output
- Preselect option for a short-term increase in cooling output
- SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side
- Switch the seat heating on/off » page 94, *Operation*
- \- Decrease the temperature
- \+ Increase temperature

The selected preset option is activated for a limited period of time.

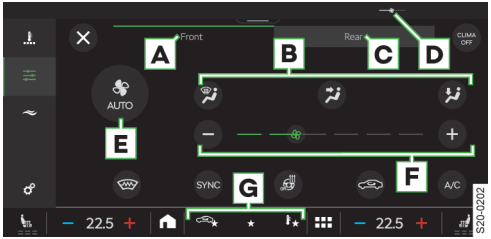
To start the preset option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

When switching off the preselect option the steering wheel heating is also switched off. This also applies to the situation where the steering wheel heating was switched on manually before starting this preselect option.

Set classic air conditioning

› Press CLIMA under the Infotainment and tap › in the Infotainment screen.

The following menu is displayed:



- A Show the front settings
- B Set the direction of the air outlet
- C Show the rear settings
- D Overview of the currently selected functions
- E Switch on automatic mode and set the operating power
- F Set the blower speed
- G Option for setting preferred Climatronic functions » page 101, *Operation*
- CLIMA OFF Switch Climatronic on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 93, *Operation*
- SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side
- Turn steering wheel heating on/off » page 94, *Operation*

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch the seat heating on/off » page 94, *Operation*

REAR Lock the increase in the heating output of the rear seat heating and set the rear temperature » page 94, *Settings*
The function is displayed after tapping the function surface C.

– Decrease the temperature
+ Increase temperature

The temperature can also be set using two fingers in the progress bar under the temperature setting area.

The rear temperature can also be set on the display in the centre console at the rear.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Infotainment screen:

LOW Maximum cooling power
HIGH Maximum heating power

The air conditioning system is also set in the ŠKODA Connect application » page 151, *Functionality*.

Further Climatronic settings

› Tap the functional area in the operating menu for the air conditioning.

The following menu is displayed:

▶ *Automatic air recirculation* – Automatic air circulation mode on/off

Also included depending on vehicle equipment:

▶ *Automatic windscreen heating* – Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating » page 93, *Settings*

▶ Switching on/off the automatic start of the seat and steering wheel heating when the ignition is switched on (depending on the interior temperature)

Consumption-friendly operation of the Climatronic
If one of the seats is not occupied, the Climatronic adjusts the air temperature accordingly to reduce energy consumption.

Eco is displayed in the infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle
When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system
If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Stand-by air conditioning

Usage

With stand-by air-conditioning, the vehicle interior is cooled, ventilated or heated when stationary according to the desired temperature set for the time of departure.

Functionality

Sources for operating the stand-by air conditioning

- Power for high-voltage battery
- Power for charging station or mains socket

Operating using power of high-voltage battery
In order to minimise the discharge of the high-voltage battery, the air-conditioning time is shorter than when operating with electricity from the charging station or the mains socket.

Use with power from the charging station or wall outlet
When charging with alternating current (AC), the high-voltage battery is charged first, and then the air conditioning starts.

When charging with direct current (DC), the vehicle is air-conditioned during the charging process. When the charging process is complete, the air conditioning process is ended or continued with power from the high-voltage battery.

Operation

Menu for operating the stationary air conditioning

› Select the ⠿ › menu in infotainment.

The following menu is displayed:

- Display of the stationary air conditioning with preset options and the possible temperature setting
- Setting the departure time » page 92, *Setting the departure time*
- Einstellung der Klimatisierung der Sitze und der Scheibenbeheizung
- Further settings for stationary air conditioning

Switching on automatically
The stand-by air conditioning system switches on automatically depending on the departure time that is set and activated.

Automatic switch off
The stand-by air conditioning switches off automatically when one of the following events occurs:

- Upon reaching the desired temperature and departure time
- If the charge of the high-voltage battery is too low

Setting the departure time

› Tap on .

› Select one of the pre-set options for setting the departure time.

In the displayed pre-selection option, you can use the functional surface ▶ to set or switch on following menu items:

- Departure time
- Weekday(s)
- Repeat for the selected weekday(s)

› Activate/deactivate the selected preselection option.

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements

✓ Ignition on
✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 ° C

Operation

Heated rear window
› Press the REAR button under the Infotainment.

Heated windscreen
› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment.
› Tap on function surface ☰ › *Front* › in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If ignition is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Mode for ventilation/defrosting of windscreen
› Press the MAX button under the Infotainment.

Settings

Automatic heated windscreen
The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

› Press the CLIMA button below the Infotainment › ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.
› Select the menu item for automatic windscreen heating.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes
The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of burns!
▶ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  - The seat is not occupied.
  - There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  - There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Operation

› Tap the or function surface in the Infotainment screen to turn on front seat heating.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The heat output is determined by the number of illuminated indicator lights that are shown in the button or in the Climatronic display.

If the heating is switched on with maximum heat output, the heating power is automatically lowered after 10 minutes.

Settings

Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system › › *Rear* Tap on › REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be turned down.

The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Ignition on

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment.

› Tap on function surface › *Front* › in the Infotainment screen.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Driver information system

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

A Display area with selected information:
- ▶ Time
- ▶ Warning lights
- ▶ Messages and information
- ▶ Outside temperature

B Display area of the assistance systems

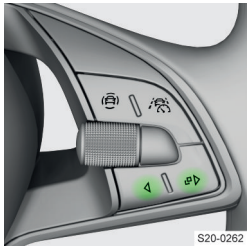
C Navigation display area

D Display area with selected information:
- ▶ Speed
- ▶ Warning lights
- ▶ Set recuperation level
- ▶ Mode set for selector lever of the automatic transmission?
- ▶ Charging status of the high-voltage battery
- ▶ Range
- ▶ Display of mileage availability » page 98, *Overview*.

ⓘ When the selector lever is moved, a diagram and a note for the mode selection of the automatic transmission are shown in the display.

Operation

Overview of the buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



◁ Toggle extension of the display area of the assistance systems in the left display area

▷ Toggle extension of the display area of the navigation in the right display area

ⓘ By pressing the button ▷ or. ◁ the original display setting is restored.

Settings

Setting the language
The language is set in the Infotainment in menu ▦ › ⚙.

Setting the time
The time is set in the Infotainment in menu ▦ › ⚙.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The manual brightness adjustment is carried out as follows when the dipped beam is switched on:

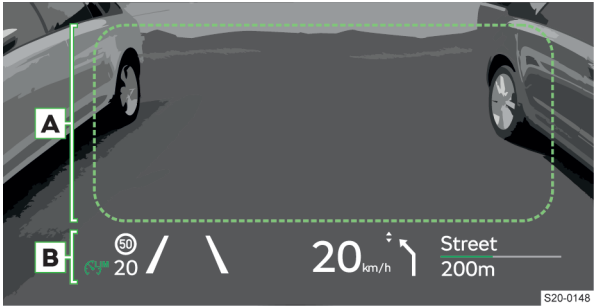
› In the Infotainment system, select the menu ⊞ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* > *Ambient lighting* .

› Adjust the setting.

Head-up display with augmented reality

Functionality

The head-up display projects selected information onto the windscreen into the driver's field of vision.



A Display area with information that is projected directly onto objects in the driver's field of vision

Information from assistance systems and navigation is projected.

B Display area with selected information regarding speed, navigation and assistance systems

Restriction

The function may, for example, be restricted or unavailable due to strong sunlight.

ⓘ Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings

› The menu ⊞ > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Interior* .

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Head-Up display* .

› Select *Head-Up display* .

In the displayed menu, the following menu items can be set:

▶ Activation/deactivation
▶ Position
▶ Brightness
▶ Colour scheme
▶ Selection of projected information

Driving data

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Infotainment:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

Memory
The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start
▶ Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term
▶ The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From charging
▶ The memory stores driving data from the last charging. The memory is reset the next time charging is done.

Operation

Display driving data
The driving data is displayed in the infotainment system in the menu > > .

Select memory
The memory selection is made by touching the corresponding tab in the infotainment screen in the following menu > > .

Reset memory
The memory is reset in Infotainment as follows:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

> > > *Interior* > *Instrument cluster*

› Re-set the associated memory.

Or:

> >

› Reset the associated memory by pressing the button **0.0**.

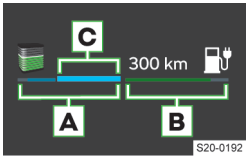
Settings

Setting units
The units are set in the Infotainment in menu > .

Available mileage

Overview

Display of the recuperation process and mileage availability



A Recuperation area with highlighted segment

B Range of available mileage

C Highlighted segment

When the segment is in area A the currently recuperated energy is displayed.

When the segment is in area B the power currently used is shown.

Functionality

As the state of charge of the high-voltage battery decreases, the blue line in the recuperation area extends.

As the state of charge of the high-voltage battery increases, the green line extends in the range of available mileage.

When driving with high mileage, the highlighted segment decreases in the range of available mileage.

Restriction

The available mileage is limited under the following conditions:

- Low state of charge of the high-voltage battery
- Rapid acceleration
- Very low or high temperature of the high-voltage battery

⚠ **WARNING**
Adapt the driving style to the available mileage and the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ If the driving performance is limited, the battery is protected against excessive wear.

Troubleshooting

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
In case of limited or inadequate mileage, the speed, acceleration and several convenience functions, e.g. the air conditioning may be restricted.

Limited mileage

illuminates

The mileage is limited due to the low state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

› The high-voltage battery is charging.

A very low or high temperature of the high-voltage battery can also affect the mileage.

Inadequate mileage

illuminates

The mileage is inadequate due to the low state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

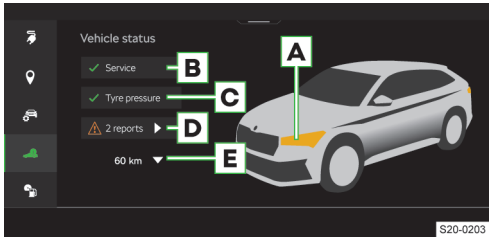
› The high-voltage battery is charging.

A very low or high temperature of the high-voltage battery can also affect the mileage.

Vehicle status

Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the infotainment system in the menu ▦ › 🚗 › ⚠.



- **A** Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings
- **B** Service appointments and vehicle identification number (VIN)
- **C** Tyre pressure monitor
- **D** Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity
- **E** Total distance traveled and distance traveled (trip)
  The distance covered (trip) can be reset by pressing the button **0.0**.

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (Hazard) or ⚠ (Warning) are displayed.

Button SET

Overview

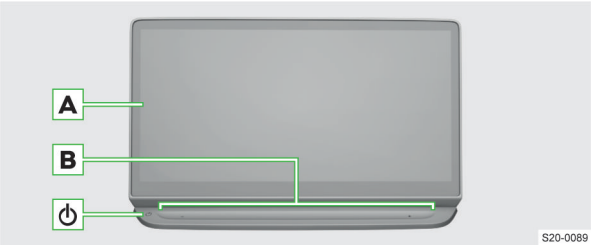
The SET button allows quick access to the settings of the following vehicle systems (depending on the vehicle fittings):

- ▶ Interior monitoring » page 40, *Settings*.
- ▶ (!) Tyre pressure monitor » page 230, *Functionality*.
- ▶ Access to selection and settings for driver assistance systems
- ▶ Access to other vehicle settings

Familiarization with infotainment

Infotainment overview

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B Touch slider for operating the infotainment functions:
- ▸ Set the temperature of the air conditioning system
- ▸ Volume setting
- ▸ Zoom in / out of the map in Navigation

⏻ Condition-based:
- ▸ **Infotainment switched off**
  - ▸ **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- ▸ **Infotainment switched on**
  - ▸ **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - ▸ **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of screen damage!

▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

HOME menu

Usage

The HOME menu is used for the quick start of preferred functions.

The functional areas can be set and their arrangement can be changed.

› To **display the menu** HOME tap the symbol ⌂ in infotainment.

Settings

Display another page

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen and drag to the left or right.

Add a preferred menu

› To **display the editing mode** hold a finger on the screen.

› Tap a free space with functional areas.

› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

The Infotainment only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with functional areas that are currently free.

› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Remove the preferred menu

› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.

› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.

› To **end edit mode**, tap ×.

Add/remove one side of the HOME menu

› To **display edit mode**, press and hold the screen with one finger.

› Tap on ✎.

› To **add another page**, tap **+**.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

› Tap 🗑 to **remove a page**.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

› Tap ⮌ to **return to the edit mode**.

Preferred functions

Usage

Infotainment offers the option of setting 3 preferred functions in the middle of the status bar to enable them to be started quickly.

Operation

Add a preferred function

› Hold your finger in the area of the preferred functions in the status bar on the infotainment screen.

› To display a menu of functions, hold your finger on the selected function and move it to the position of the preferred functions in the status bar.

› To complete the process, tap the symbol ⮌.

Remove the preferred function

› Hold your finger on the shortcut of the function in the status bar on the infotainment screen.

› Tap the symbol 🗑.

MENU menu

Usage

Available infotainment menus are displayed in the menu MENU.

The menu MENU will be displayed by tapping the ⠿ symbol on the infotainment screen.

Settings

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.

› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Configuration wizard

Functionality

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is on and there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display** ⠿ > ⚙ > tap *Configuration wizard* .

System

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the ⠿ > ⚙ menu:

▶ Time and date
▶ Language
▶ Units
▶ Restore factory settings

Factory settings
Resetting the Infotainment to factory defaults restores all factory defaults.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap on ⠿ > ⚙.

› *Reset to factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

ⓘ Resetting to factory settings will deactivate the ŠKODA Connect services. To activate this, it is necessary to restart the infotainment and reactivate the services.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

› ⠿ > ⚙ > *System information* .

Sound

Settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu ⠿ > 🔈.

The following menu items can be set:

- ▶ Setting the equalizer
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

  The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

  - ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
  - ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting
  - ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- ▶ Setting space optimisation
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume

ℹ The volume can be adjusted by moving a finger on the touch slider below the infotainment screen.

Infotainment operation

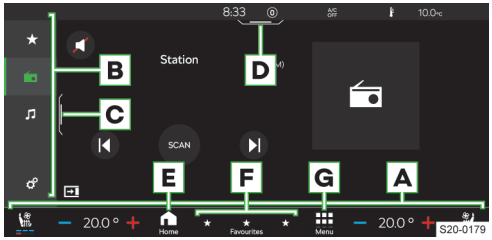
Operation on the screen

What you should be mindful of

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

Overview



A	Status bar
B	Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C	Display/close the submenu window
D	Display of the Infotainment control centre
E	Display of the HOME menu
F	Preferred functions
G	Display of the MENU menu

Operation

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

For help with gesture control, see the instructions in the Infotainment.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on ⠿ > ▯ > ✎.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu ⠿ > ⚙ > *Screen*:

- Image of the screen background
- Brightness level of the screen
- Switch off the screen
- Display the time
- Confirmation sounds and animations

Keyboard

Overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

- Alphanumeric
- Numeric
- Keyboard for input
- Keyboard for search

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap ⊕ on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the other character variant.

› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› For **set-up** ⁞⁞⁞ › ⚙ › tap *Additional keypad languages* .
› Select the desired language.

Control Centre

Usage

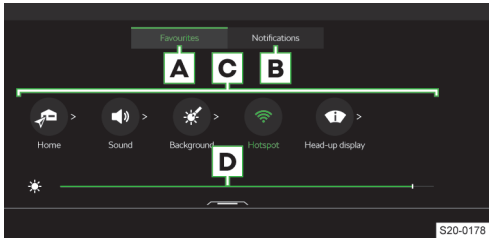
The Infotainment control centre provides quick access to preferred functions.

Overview

Display of the control centre

› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Control Centre



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features

B Display list of informational messages

C Preferred functions

D Setting the instrument and key illumination

Closing the control centre

› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Set functional surfaces of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the **+** icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.
› To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

It is possible to interrupt a dialogue at any time and issue a new statement without having to wait for a complete response.

Advanced voice control
The advanced voice control of the vehicle enables an online search and operation of the vehicle functions.

The advanced voice control understands fluently spoken, complete sentences. It is not necessary to use precisely defined commands or empty phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ Privacy is switched off in the vehicle. *privacy* 50 seconds.

Requirement for recognition of the activation command
✓ Activated menu item ⠿ > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"*OK Laura*"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

Enter voice command
› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

ⓘ The activation command can be used to speed up voice control *"OK Laura"* together a voice command.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command *"pause"*.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command *"cancel"* during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu > > *Voice control:*

▶ Confirmation tones

▶ Enable/disable use of the activation word

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say *"Help"*.

The *"Help"* voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say *"overview"*.

Radio

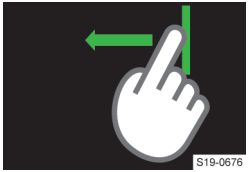
FM Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap on ⠿ > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



› Tap on ⠿ > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

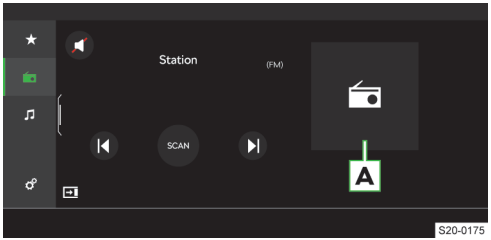
Close player

› Tap on ⊡.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Player



A Radio station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.

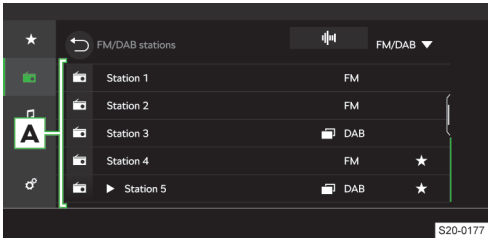
SCAN Switching the SCAN function on / off

🔇 Activate/deactivate muting

⊡ Close player

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap on ⠿ > ♫ > 📻.
› To select a frequency range tap ▼.



A List of available stations

⮌ Show available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected.

▼ Select frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set.

▶ Station currently being played

★ Station stored on the presets

Find stations manually

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › in the **Radio** main menu.

▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on .

▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.

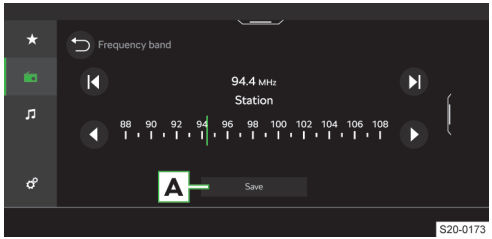
› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually

› Display list of available sensors.

› Tap on .

[i] For FM stations, the functional area is available when the menu item › › › *Radio* › *Station display:* › *FM* is set.



⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next available station

◀ / ▶ Look for each other

A Store the currently selected station on a station key for the preferred station.

The frequency range scale can be used for the search.

› Hold down the scroll mark and move it to the desired position.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭
The variant for **changing stations** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio* > *Changing the station:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Restriction

▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch RDS on/off
The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

▶ Traffic program (TP)
▶ Radio text
▶ RDS Regional
▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)
▶ Regional station logo

Turn on/off radio text reception
When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Radio text* .

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Station display:* .

› Select one of the following menu items:

- *FM/DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
- *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Tap on Advanced setting

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *RDS Regional:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:

- *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

ⓘ If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Add the station logo
Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio* > *Tap station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on ✎ > ▣ at the desired preset button.
› Select the desired logo.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap on ▣ in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off
When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Regional FM station logo
Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Region for station logo:* .

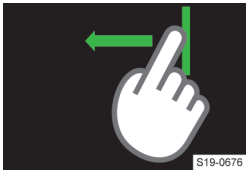
DAB radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap on ⠿ > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



› Tap on ⠿ > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

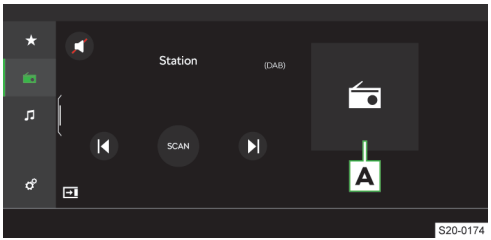
Close player

› Tap on ⊡.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Player



A Radio station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.

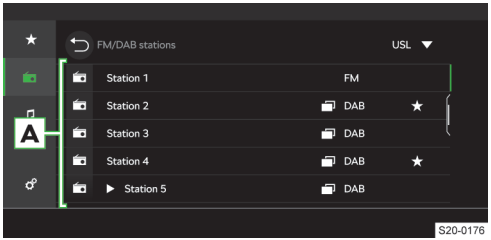
SCAN Switching the SCAN function on / off

🔇 Activate/deactivate muting

⊡ Close player

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap on ⠿ > ♫ > 📻.
› To select a frequency range tap ▼.



A List of available stations

↩ Show available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, the desired station must still be selected.

▼ Select frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last station to be played in the respective frequency range is set.

▶ Station currently being played

★ Station stored on the presets

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › in the **Radio** main menu.

▶ To delete **one** preset button, tap on .

▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **Start automatic play**, tap SCAN.

› To **End automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭

The variant for **changing stations** is set as follows using the functional areas ⏮/⏭:

› In the menu **Radio** › *Radio* › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Restriction

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

Settings

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap .

› *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Turn on/off radio text reception
When the function is switched on, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Radio text* .

Display FM / DAB stations in the list of available stations
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Station display:* .

FM/DAB – the list shows available FM and DAB stations.

Advanced setting

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Add the station logo
Infotainment offers the option of adding logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio* > *Station logos* and select the desired frequency range.

Or:

› In the list of preferred stations, tap on ✎ > ▣ at the desired preset button.

› Select the desired logo.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap on ▣ in the list of available logos.

Switch adding automatic station logos on/off
When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is added when the station is stored on a preset.

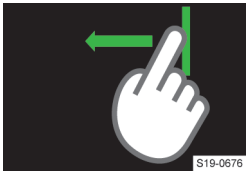
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙.
› *Radio* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

WEB radio and podcasts

Overview

Display menu
› Tap on ▦ > ♫ > ▣.

Display the player



› Tap on ▦ > ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

Close player
› Tap on ⇥.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

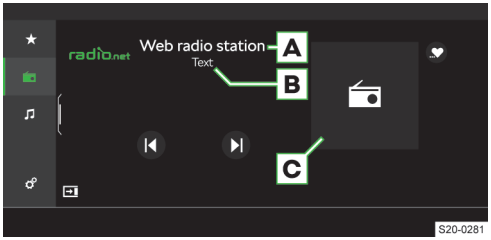
Web radio player

› In the menu **radio**, to **select a web radio** tap > > *Web radio* .

› Select a web radio station from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on to search for a web radio station.



A Station name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Station logos

/ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.

Display related web radio stations and podcasts

Close player

When the symbol is displayed no internet connection is available.

Podcast player

› In the menu **radio**, to **select a podcast** tap > > > > *Web radio* .

› Select a podcast from the displayed lists.

Or:

› Tap on to search for podcasts.

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

A Podcast name

B Information about the broadcast content

C Podcast logo

Tap: start playback

Tap: pause

/ Switch to the previous/next station
The type of switching depends on how the arrow buttons are set up > *Radio* > *Arrow buttons:*.

15 **Tap:** Go back 15 secs

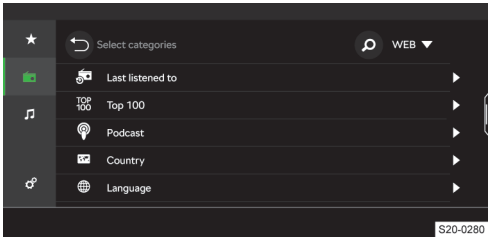
15 **Tap:** Go forward 15 secs

- Display related web radio stations and podcasts
- View episodes of the podcast being played
- Close player

When the symbol is displayed no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› In the menu **radio**, to **display the list** tap › ▼ › *Web radio* .



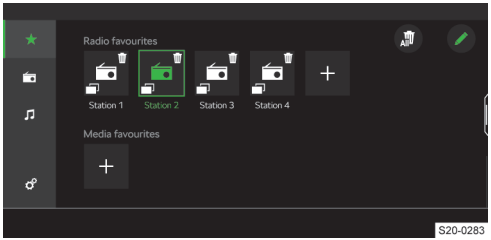
- Search for web radio stations and podcasts
- Recently played web radio stations and podcasts
- 100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
- Go to podcasts and select
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

Preset buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

The preset buttons can be used to store stations from all available frequency ranges as well as web radio stations and podcasts.

› Tap on › ♫ › ★.



+ Store current station or podcast

Switch edit mode on/off

- - Delete all preset buttons for preferred stations and media
- - Delete the desired preset button
- - Change logo

The position of the stored preset buttons can be changed.

› Tap on .

› Press and hold the desired preset button until it is free.

› Move the preset button to a different position.

Operation

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Store stations to a preset button for favourite stations from the list of available stations

› To **display the station list**, tap on in the **Radio** menu.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap on + or the preset button for favourite stations that you want to replace.

Delete the stored preset button for the favourite station

› To **erase**, tap on ★ › ✎ in the **Radio** main menu.

▸ To delete **one** preset button, tap on 🗑.

▸ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on and confirm the deletion.

Function areas ⏮ / ⏭

The variant for **changing stations** using functional surfaces ⏮ / ⏭ in the **Radio** menu, is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Changing the station:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Restriction

▸ In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

▸ The *privacy* is switched on in the vehicle.

Settings

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on ⚙ › Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .

› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

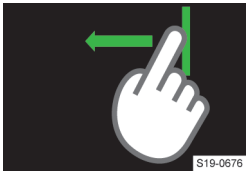
ⓘ If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

Player

Overview

Display the player



› Tap on ⠿ › ♫.
› Press the bar button on the right edge of the screen and drag to the left.

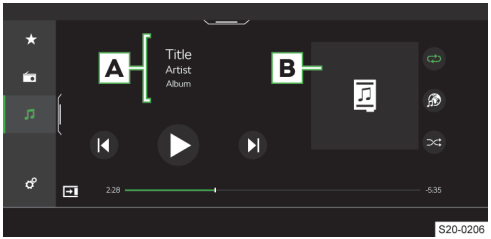
Close player

› Tap on ⊡.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player

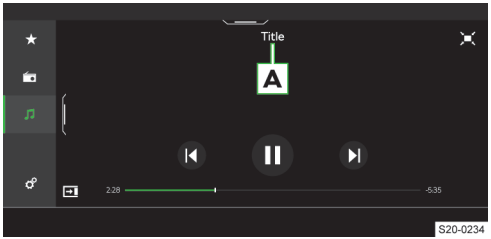


A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

⊡ Close player

Video player



A Name of the track being played

⤢ Enlarge the image display

⤡ Shrink image display

⊡ Close player

Player controls

Operation - Basics

▷ **Tap:** start playback

⏸ **Tap:** pause

⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

- **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
- **Tap:** play the next song
- **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

- Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
- Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
- Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
- Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management

› To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.

› To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.

› Tap on until the media list for the current source is displayed.

› Tap on > .

› To **manage the playlist** tap in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

▶ Control playback.

▶ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving + to the desired position.

▶ Delete track by tapping on .

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Manage files

What you should be mindful of

▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

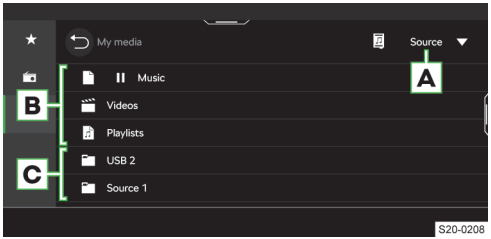
▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Media list



A Select source

B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected mobile devices

⮌ Show available sources

Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Operation

Manage favourites

› To **to save** the preferred medium tap ★ › + and select the desired menu item.

› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 and confirm the deletion..

› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 and confirm the deletion..

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Technical data

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes**® methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
Xvid	Xvid	20
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.

▶ If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.

▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

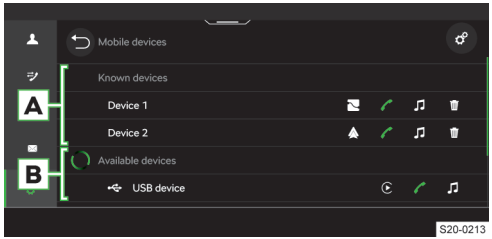
⚠ **WARNING**
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› ⊞ > ⚙ > *mobile devices* .



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
- The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
- The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

ⓘ If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility***

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping ⠿ > ⚙ > *mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* determine.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

› ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Using the phone

Overview

Display menu

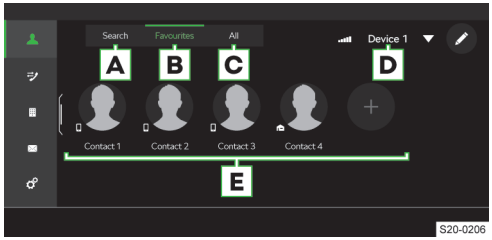
› Tap on ▦ > ✆.

ⓘ If there are no phone features available, check that the mobile device is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on ▦ > ✆ > 👤.

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

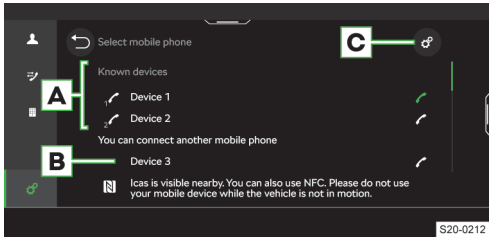
D Name of the main telephone

E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

ⓘ If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Manage telephones

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Select mobile phone* .



A Main telephone, additional telephone and known devices

B List of available telephones

C Setting for the Infotainment Bluetooth® function

✆ The telephone enables connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”

🗑 Delete telephone from the list of known devices

ⓘ To display the recycle bin icon and the available SmartLink connections, click the ✆ icon press and drag to the left.

ⓘ If the connection icon is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types
The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

▸ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.

▸ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

▸ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **Phone** ▾ in any menu.

› Select the desired phone.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› ⠿ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .

Or:

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Select mobile phone* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Manage contacts

Operation

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **display the preferred contacts**, tap on 👤 in the **Phone** menu.

› To **store the contact**, tap on **+**.

› Select or search for the desired contact.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **delete the contact** tap on 👤 › ✎ in the **Phone** menu.
  ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
  ▶ To delete **all** preset buttons, tap on 🗑 and confirm the deletion.

ℹ The position of the preferred contacts can be changed.

› Tap on ✎.
› Hold down the desired contact until it is free.
› Move the contact to another position.

Settings

Import telephone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* .
› Select the desired sorting mode.

Tap on Advanced setting

Update telephone contacts
When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Telephone conversation

Overview

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- Accept incoming call
- Hold a call
- Return to the call on hold
- 🔔/🔕 Switch the ringer off / on
- 🎤/🎤 Switch the microphone off / on
- 👤 Show details of the caller
- Reject an incoming call using an SMS message
- Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
  The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone**, tap on 🔊 .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› Tap on ▦ > 📳 > ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

› For **establishing a connection** ✓ .

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

Settings

Turn call rejection with a message on/off
If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off
This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *HD voice quality* .

Tap on Advanced setting

Ringtone
Some phones do not support the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Conference call

Overview

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping ✓ .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on 👤+👥.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- Return to the held conference call
- Switch the microphone off / on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

Operation

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants

End conversation with the conference call participant

Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings

Turn call rejection with a message on/off
If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

SMS

Operation

Send a text message

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ✉ > ▼.

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on ✉.

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ✉ > ▼.

Depending on the connected telephone, it may still be necessary to select the *SMS* menu item.

› Tap on ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

To **switch the display of messages as a conversation on or off**, tap on ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap on ⚙ > *New message notifications* in the **Phone** menu.

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 🔊 is tapped.

ⓘ For a quick response to the selected message, tap on ✉ and select the desired answer.

Settings

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off
When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message on or off
When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message is received.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Email

Operation

Send e-mails

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ▼ > menu *tap on EMAIL* > ✉.
› Enter a subject for the e-mail.
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.
› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

Multiple recipients can be added.

› *Tap on Send* .

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ▼ > menu *tap on EMAIL* .
› Select the desired e-mail.

The following functions can be selected in the displayed e-mail:

▼ Reply to all or just to the sender.
✉ Reply with a new e-mail.
✉ Forward e-mail.
⋮ E-mail management.

When the 📎 icon is displayed, the e-mail contains an attachment.

Settings

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new email on / off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new e-mail is received.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Voice mailbox

Operation

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› Tap on ⠿ > 📞 > ⠿.
› Tap on ∞.

ⓘ If no voice mailbox number is entered, a menu for entering this number will be displayed.

Settings

Voice mailbox number

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

WLAN use

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLink connection.

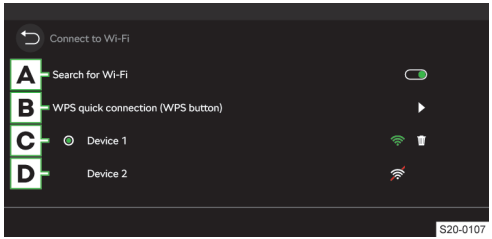
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices ⊞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Connected devices* .

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› For **displaying the list** ⊞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* .



A Search for available visible hotspots

B Connection to the hotspot via WPS

C Previously connected hotspots

D Available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Signal strength of the hotspot

Hotspot signal is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with access protection and WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› The WiFi hotspot of the infotainment in the menu ⊞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Use as a hotspot* switch on

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the infotainment is the menu ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Search for WLAN* switch on

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Password:* .

› Enter the password and confirm.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To switch data transmission on / off with the connected device ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⊘.

Tap on Advanced setting

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network name:* .

› Enter the name and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic connection using the QR code

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic WPS connection

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› ⁞⁞⁞ > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS-PIN* .

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot
The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

Self-help

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

- Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
- Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
- For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
- If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Use of SmartLink Function

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

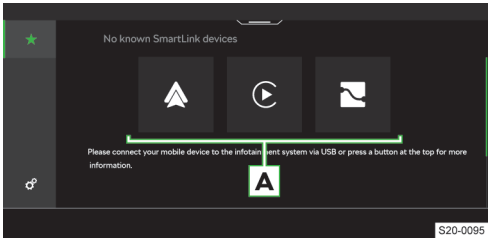
Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

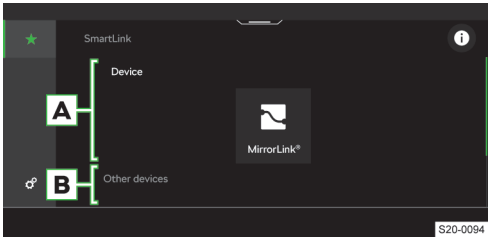
Display menu
› Tap on ⠿ > ▞.

Menu if no device connected



A List of supporting connection types

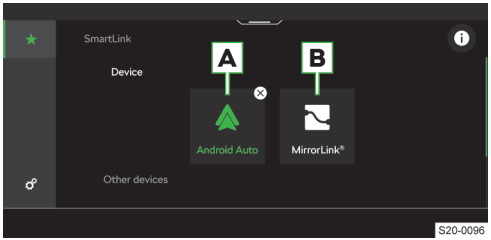
Connected devices menu



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device in use



A Used connection type

B Available connection type

⊗ Disconnecting

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question,

the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving
For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Android Auto

Connection overview

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type ⚠.

◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

🎙 Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Auto connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.

✓ The mobile device as well as the Android Auto connection are supported in the respective country.
✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Settings

Connection by USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable .
› Select connection via Android Auto.

<eigenname translate="no">Apple CarPlay</eigenname> Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment from

› ▦ > ▞ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® Freisprechprofil.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ⚠ symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

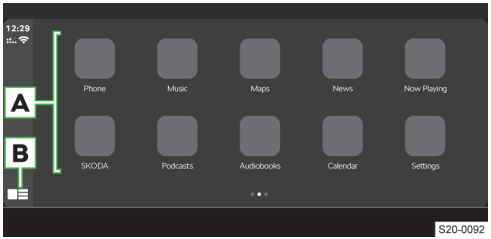
Disconnecting

› In the menu Android Auto ⊙ > tap “Exit”.
› Tap on ⊗.

Apple CarPlay

Connection overview

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type ◘.



A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:
▶ **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.

✓ The mobile device as well as the Apple CarPlay connection are supported in the respective country.

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

Settings

Connection by USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable .

› Select connection via Apple CarPlay.

<eigenname translate="no">Apple CarPlay</eigenname> Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment from

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.

› ▦ > ▞ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* .

› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ◘.

› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

<eigenname translate="no">Apple CarPlay</eigenname> Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices from

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.

✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.

› Press and hold the ☎ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

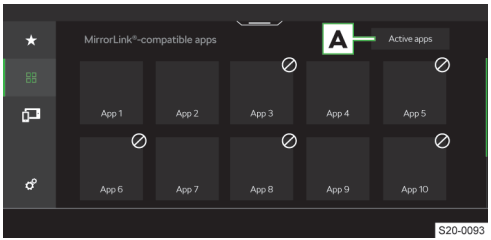
Disconnecting

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink

Connection overview

› In the SmartLink menu, tap on ★.
› Select the connected device.
› Select the connection type ⧉.



A Display of running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
★ Display of available devices
⊞ List of applications
⧉ Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
⚙ Settings

Connection conditions

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The mobile device as well as the MirrorLink connection are supported in the respective country.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Operation of the running application

▬ Display of control surfaces at the bottom
▭ Display of control surfaces at the top
⮌ Return to the menu MirrorLink

Settings

Connection by USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the USB input using a cable .
› Select connection via MirrorLink.

Disconnecting

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on ★.
› Tap on ⊗.

Navigation

Map

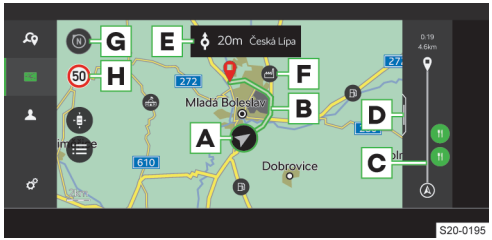
Overview

Display menu

› Tap on ⠿ > ➢.

Map overview

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on 🗺.



A Vehicle position
B Route
C Route view
D **Press and drag to the left:** Show route overview
E Following driving recommendation
F POI icon
Tap: Show destination details
G **Tap:** Change map orientation
▸ North-facing 2D map

- ▶ 2D map facing the direction of travel
- ▶ 3D map facing the direction of travel

H Road signs for the affected route section

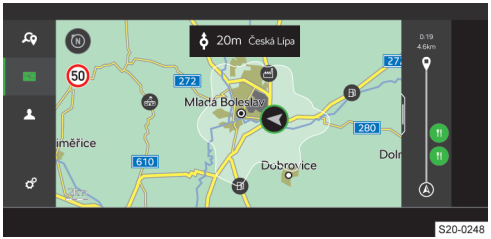
End route guidance

Centre the map on the vehicle position

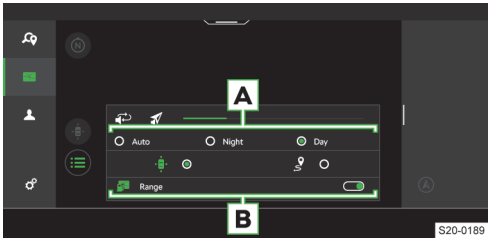
Display menu for setting the map display

Map with information about range
The map shows the estimated range achievable of the vehicle if using highlighted sections.

› Tap on ☰ › .



Select the type of displayed map
› In the **Navigation** menu, tap on ☰ › ☰.



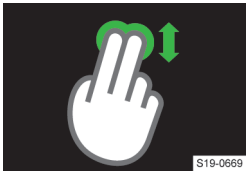
A Display map in accordance with the following setting:
- ▶ *Auto* - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
- ▶ *Day* - Map in day mode
- ▶ *Night* - Map in night mode

B When route guidance is running, one of the following map displays can be selected:
- ▶ - Map centred on the vehicle position
- ▶ - Map with the entire route/choice of alternative routes
- ▶ - Show map with information about range

Operation

▶ Move map

▶ Enter destination by tapping the map item



▶ Switch 2D/3D map display

▶ Zoom into the map

▶ Zoom out of the map

▶ Rotate the map

ⓘ You can zoom in / out on the map by moving two fingers on the touch slider below the infotainment screen.

Settings

Show preferred POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Set preferred POI categories* .
› Set favourite categories.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

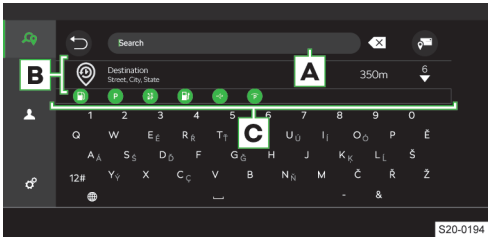
Determining the navigation database version
› ▦ > ⚙ > *System information* .

Find destination

Overview

Find destination

› In the **Navigation** › menu *Find* .



A Input line

B Last searched destination

C POI categories

▸ **Tap:** search for the selected category

▼ Show list of searched destinations

Enter destination via the address

Destination details

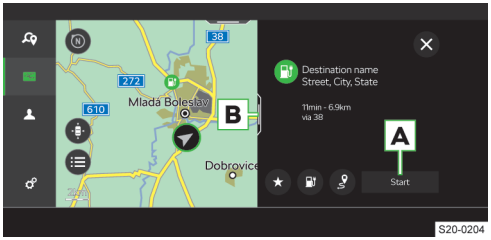
The details window contains a map, available destination information and functional areas for selecting functions.

The destination details window is displayed in the following cases:

▸ After a destination has been searched for or selected in the menu

▸ After a destination is tapped on in the route overview

▸ After an item or POI icon has been tapped on in the map



A Start route guidance

▸ ★ - Save destination as a favourite

▸ ★ - Delete favourites

▸ - Save charging station as a favourite

▸ - Delete charging station

▸ - Show route

B **Press and drag to the left:** Enlarge the window with destination details

Depending on the destination context and destination type, the following functions are displayed:

▸ *Demo* - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

▸ *Rename* - Rename the saved destination

▸ *Call* - Establish a connection to the POI telephone number

▸ *Edit* - Option for editing the home or work address

▸ *Insert* - Insert destination into the route

▸ *Stop route guidance* - Stop route guidance

Operation

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter destination via the address

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Enter the destination using GPS coordinates

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Find* > > *Enter latitude and longitude* .

A menu is displayed for entering the destination using GPS coordinates.

› Enter the desired GPS latitude and longitude information.

› *Map* .

Details of the searched destination are displayed with the option of starting route guidance by tapping on *Start* .

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Settings

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› > > > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Set preferred POI categories* .

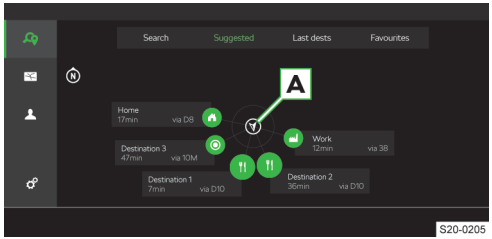
› Set favourite categories.

Predictive destinations

Overview

Suggested destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Tap on proposals* .



A North-facing vehicle position

Destination with the home address

Destination with the work address

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

- Destination with the home address
- Destination with the work address
- Favourites
- Last destinations
- Predictive destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

Operation

Delete the suggested destination

› Touch the functional area for the suggested destination and swipe left.

› Tap on 🗑.

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› ⠿ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern* .

Settings

Turn predictive destination suggestions on / off

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by Infotainment depending on the number of journeys and the daily travel time to the given destination.

If the predictive destination suggestion function is turned on, the destinations are offered in the suggested destinations as well as during the travel by the system.

› ⠿ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Learn usage pattern* .

Last destinations

Overview

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Last destinations* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Delete last destination

› Touch the functional area for the last destination and swipe left.

› Tap on 🗑.

Favourites

Overview

List of preferred destinations

› In the **Navigation** > menu *Favourites* .

Tapping the list entry with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Operation

Deleting favourites

› Touch the functional area for the favourites and swipe left.

› Tap on 🗑.

Settings

Setting home address

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚲ > *Favourites* > *At home* .

› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

The defined destination for the home address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚲ > *Tap on proposals* > ⌂.

Set the work address

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚲ > *Favourites* > *Work* .

› Select and enter the destination via the address and consult the current vehicle position if necessary.

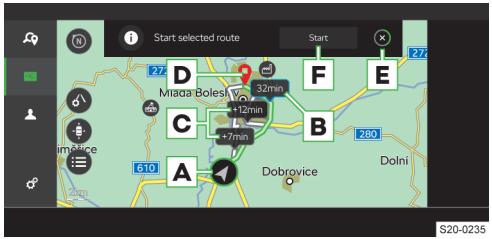
The defined destination for the work address is displayed in the overview of suggested destinations.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚲ > *Tap on proposals* > 🏢.

Route guidance

Overview

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

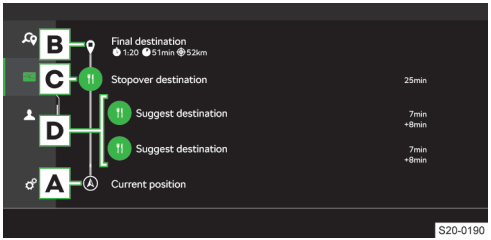
▶ **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

F Start route guidance

ⓘ Show information on the selected route

⚙ Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Delete*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

- ▶ *Show on map*
- ▶ *Add stopover destination*

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view ŠKODA:

Low density — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available

Change route destinations to each other

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ☰ > 🔈.

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Setting navigation announcements

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Navigation announcements* .

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Set route options

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on route options* .

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switch road sign display on/off

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Traffic sign* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switch range warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the charge status of the high-voltage battery drops below 10%, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest charging station.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Range warning* .

Activate / deactivate the automatic addition of a charging station on the route

When the function is switched on, the infotainment system automatically adds a charging station to the route if necessary.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Automatically add charging stops* .

› Select the desired properties of preferred charging stations.

Tap on Advanced setting

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Traffic sign* .

› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Signs on motorways* .

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Country information at border crossing* .

Towing a trailer

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› ▦ > ➢ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Tap on Take trailers into account* .

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› ▦ > ⌃ > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* .
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Demo mode

Usage

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

Settings

Switching demo mode on / off

› ▦ > ⌃ > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

› Turn on the demo mode.
› ▦ > ⌃ > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* > *Defining the starting point of the demo mode* .
› Select the desired destination to be used as the starting point for the demo mode.

Or:

› Turn on the demo mode.
› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

Destination details are displayed.

› Display the window with destination details in full screen.

The window is enlarged by pressing the **I** button in the window bar swiping left.

› *Demo* .

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the contracting parties with regard to the provision of these services are regulated in an independent agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal and the ŠKODA Connect application.

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not part of the vehicle's equipment. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website
The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the ŠKODA Connect application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

ŠKODA Connect Portal website
The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Requirements

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ A registered user is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
✓ The *privacy* is switched off.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services
Availability depends on the following conditions:

▸ Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.

- The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
- In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

- The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.
  - The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services
The availability of the services is indicated by the following symbols in the status bar on the Infotainment screen:

- **White** - the ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- **Gray** - the vehicle is outside the signal range.
- - the ŠKODA Connect services are deactivated by the user.

ŠKODA Connect application

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect application
The ŠKODA Connect application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp

Requirements

✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

Data connection

Usage

The use of all online services requires a data connection in the vehicle.

Types of data connection setup
- By connecting the Infotainment to the external hotspot with Internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

- Using the **eSIM** for active ŠKODA Connect online services.

Requirements

- In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

- The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
- ŠKODA AUTO can make changes to the mobile network in the meantime, e.g. generation-related replacement of an outdated technology; it assumes no liability.

Settings

Turn on/off the data connection for ŠKODA Connect online services
For ŠKODA Connect, the prepaid data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared via Wi-Fi with another 8 connected devices.

› ⊞ > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

ⓘ Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website:

www ***https://skoda.cubictelecom.com***

Overview of online service data connection usage ŠKODA Connect
On the following website on your user account in the data connection overview, you have the option of purchasing data packages retrospectively and displaying the current status of the packages you have already purchased:

www ***https://skoda.cubictelecom.com***

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- ŠKODA Connect application

ⓘ When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

Activation of ŠKODA Connectservices
The services are activated by reading the QR code generated by the infotainment system.

› ⊞ > ⚙ > *Connect ŠKODA Connect* .

› To display the QR code, follow the instructions on the infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

http://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localisation services. Failure to do so may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the location services, the *privacy* switch on

Functionality

When using the ŠKODA Connectservices, the user and vehicle data, as well as information on localisation services, is sent.

The switched on *privacy* influences data transmission and data transmission via eSIM. The data transmission of connected devices via Wi-Fi is not affected.

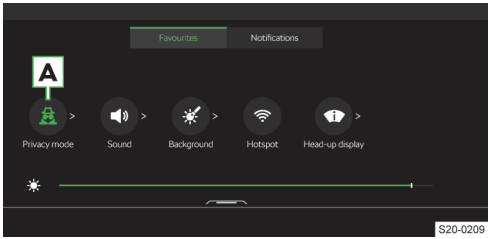
Settings

The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

The vehicle user switch the *privacy* on / off

Settings in the control centre

› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



A *privacy* on / off

▶ - *privacy* switched on

▶ – *privacy* switched off

***privacy* switch on / off in the Settings menu**

› ▦ > ⚙ > *privacy* .

ⓘ The symbol for the switched on / off *privacy* is displayed in the status bar.

***privacy* switched on**

▶ All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you need are turned off.

▶ All localisation services are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched off.

▶ No online updates available.

***privacy* switched off**

▶ Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.

▶ Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.

▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.

▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymized data

When switched off *privacy* the vehicle can collect and send anonymized data in order to improve the services of selected third parties.

This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

Starting-off and Driving

Switch on the ignition

Operating conditions

✓ The high-voltage battery charging status is sufficient.

✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!

The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

▶ Always keep the key with you.

Operation

Switch on the ignition

› Press the starter button.

Or:

› Depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

When the ignition is switched on and after selecting automatic gearbox mode, the vehicle starts moving slowly.

▶ Before selecting automatic gearbox mode, apply the brake.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

▶ During a journey, the ignition must be switched on.

NOTICE
With extremely low outdoor temperatures, the temperature of the high-voltage battery may drop so low that it may no longer be possible to start the ignition.
Starting the ignition again is only possible when the temperature of the high-voltage battery has risen sufficiently.

Switch off ignition
› Press the starter button.

The ignition is switched off automatically when the driver gets out of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Ignition cannot be turned on, the system did not detect the key

illuminates

› Insert the key into the cup holder at the front.
› Press the starter button.
› If ignition doesn't turn on, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

It is not possible to switch off ignition
› Hold the starter button or press twice.

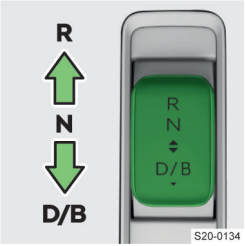
Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox modes

Select automatic gearbox mode
› To change the automatic gearbox mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector lever then returns to the starting position.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



R **Reverse gear**
Select the mode **R only** when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**
There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/B **Forward drive/forward drive with strong recuperation**
The choice between **D** and **B** is made by moving the selector lever to the rear.

Unlock automatic gearbox
lights up - the automatic gearbox is locked

› Press the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

WARNING
Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!
▸ When the mode **D**, **B**, **R** or **N** is selected, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

› Turn on the ignition.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Use the selector lever to select the desired mode.

In the instrument cluster display *READY* is displayed in the status bar.

› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode D/B and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Switch off the ignition.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Eco mode

ECO mode is suitable for a economic driving style. The engine power is limited, the maximum speed is reduced to 130 km/h. The Climatronic switches to economy mode.

Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

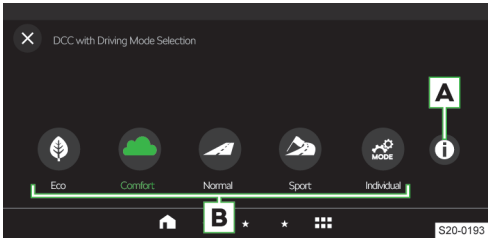
Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.

Press the button again MODE and the menu is closed.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the relevant function surface B.

ⓘ After switching on the ignition, the Normal mode is automatically selected.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

illuminates together with ⚠

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Energy recovery

Usage

The energy generated during braking is stored in the high-voltage battery during recuperation. A higher recuperation level also increases the braking force when the accelerator pedal is released.

Operation

Automatic recuperation

› Select the D mode of automatic transmission.

› Activate the Eco assistant » page 185.

In the instrument cluster display AD is displayed.

Pressing the rocker switch – or + on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual selection of the recuperation level. Automatic recuperation is activated again by pressing the accelerator pedal.

ⓘ The automatic recuperation adjusts the power of the recuperation braking to the current driving situation.

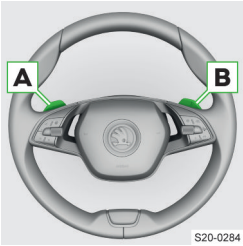
ⓘ Automatic recuperation can also be carried out in the B mode of the automatic transmission with the ACC switched on. In the instrument cluster AB is displayed.

Select the recuperation level

› Select the D mode of automatic transmission.

› Deactivate the Eco assistant » page 185.

› Select the recuperation level with the shift paddles.



A Choose a higher recuperation level

B Choose a lower recuperation level

If no recuperation level is selected, the vehicle will move without recuperation braking after releasing the accelerator pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

D lights up - light recuperation

D lights up - medium recuperation

D lights up - strong recuperation

AD lights up - automatic recuperation

The higher the charging status of the high-voltage battery, the lower the power of the recuperation braking.

The recuperation can also be done when pressing the brake pedal.

Troubleshooting

Recuperation error

illuminates together with
Message regarding a recuperation fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Use driving mode ECO » page 157.
- Use the B mode of the automatic transmission to decelerate. This will charge the high-voltage battery.
- Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
- Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 230.
- Remove unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

WARNING
When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

NOTICE
With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

- Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical

vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.

- ▶ For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
- ▶ Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- ▶ A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
- ▶ Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- ▶ If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- ▶ Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- ▶ Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a)]	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
132 kW electric motor	1000	750
150 kW electric motor	1000	750
[a)] With gradients up to 12%.		

Towing eye and towing procedure

Towing lug

Removing the front cap

› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap

S20-0128

› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye

S18-0235

› Screw in the towing eye.
› Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
› Tighten the towing eye.

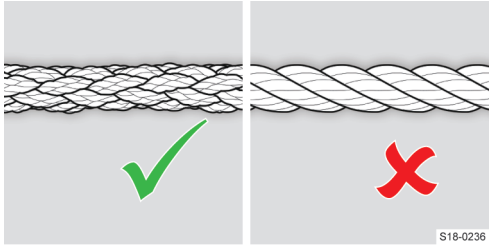
After the towing process

› Unscrew the towing eye.
› Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!

▸ The tow rope must not be twisted.
▸ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.


S18-0236

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Always keep the tow rope taut during towing.
▸ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of engine damage!
▸ The vehicle must not be towed when the front axle is raised.
▸ The vehicle must not be towed without the ignition being switched on.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

▸ At the front towing eye
▸ At the rear towing eye
▸ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch

ⓘ For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

› Drive slowly and smoothly.

› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Select the **N** mode of automatic transmission.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.

▶ Turn on the ignition.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Danger of engine damage!

▶ Towing the vehicle with the ignition on.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ **DANGER**

Danger of the brakes overheating!

▶ Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.

▶ If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Inspecting the brake fluid level

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

✓ Ignition off

Checking

The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.

› Do not refill liquid.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of ⓘ is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ **WARNING**

Danger of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.

▶ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low
illuminates
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty
illuminates together with
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads
illuminates
› Drive to a specialist garage, exercising appropriate caution.

Reduced braking effect
Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.
› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster motor does not work
› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

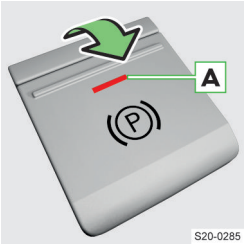
Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of the vehicle rolling away automatically!
▸ Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is activated and Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of switch locking!
▸ The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button Ⓟ must remain empty.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of damage to vehicle!
▸ Ensure that the parking brake is switched off if it is necessary for the vehicle to roll, e.g. when driving through a car wash.

Manual switch on



› Pull on the Ⓟ button and hold it.

The indicator light A in the switch and Ⓟ with PARK light up together in the instrument cluster.

Switching on automatically
The parking brake turns on automatically after turning off the ignition.

Automatic shut-off
The parking brake is automatically deactivated when a mode of the automatic transmission is selected.

Conditions for automatic shutting down
✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened

Deactivate the parking brake before leaving the vehicle
If you still need to roll the vehicle after leaving it, proceed as follows:

› In infotainment ⠿ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes* .
› Select *Brakes* › *Deactivate now* .
› Press the brake pedal and select the **N** mode of the automatic transmission.
› Get out of the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

(P) illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

(P) flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake
Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off
› Connect the 12-volt vehicle battery to a power source, such as the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on

› Pull the button (P) and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off
› Release the button (P).

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle
With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. AUTO HOLD lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
AUTO HOLD lights up - Auto Hold is activated.

AUTO HOLD lights up - Vehicle is secured by auto hold

Automatic protection from the parking brake
Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. (P) lights up in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Auto Hold is activated.
✓ The automatic transmission N mode is not selected.

Settings

Activating and deactivating
The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system.

› ▦ › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Outside* .
› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Brakes* .
› Select *Brakes* menu item and activate or deactivate the function.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Electronic engine sound (e-sound)

Functionality

The e-Sound generates an electronic engine noise while driving at a speed of up to 25 km/h.

ⓘ It is not possible to switch off the e-Sound.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Despite the e-sound, the vehicle does not have to be clearly audible to other road users.

Troubleshooting

e-sound failure

illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)
ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

flashes - ESC is engaged

Traction control (TCS)
ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

flashes - ASR is engaged

Antilock braking system (ABS)
ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)
EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDL+)
XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

Active steering assistance (DSR)
In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control
Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions
✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions
✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)
TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions
✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)
eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) facilitates operation of the brake pedal. At the same time, charging of the high-voltage battery is made possible through regenerative braking.

After switching off the ignition, the eBKV (electronic brake force distribution) function is either restricted or not available.

ⓘ If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Regenerative braking
Regenerative braking produces energy that is stored in the high-voltage battery. The force of the braking effect depends on the selected driving mode, as well as the state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

During regenerative braking, pulsating movements of the brake pedal and fluctuating decelerations of the vehicle can occur.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster faulty

illuminates

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates - safety distance too small

illuminates - warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- About 30 seconds after starting (lights up in the instrument cluster)
- When driving around a sharp bend
- During an ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation
Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation / deactivation and setting in Infotainment
In the menu ▦ › ⊜ › ⚙.

-
  - *Active* - Activation/deactivation of the Front Assist
  - *Advance warning* - Activation/deactivation and setting the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - *Display distance warning* - Activation/deactivation of distance warning
  - *Swerve support* - if the function is activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by a braking and steering intervention
  - *Cornering brake function* - when the function is activated, the system can slow down the vehicle when turning at low speeds to avoid a collision with the oncoming vehicle

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster
OFF illuminates

I Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available
illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the front radar sensor.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention
› Clean the front radar sensor.
› If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lights up - Danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h
The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-85 km/h
The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

✓ Front Assist is deactivated.
✓ The vehicle speed is 5-85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

LIM illuminates - the cruise control is activated.
flashing - the set limit is exceeded

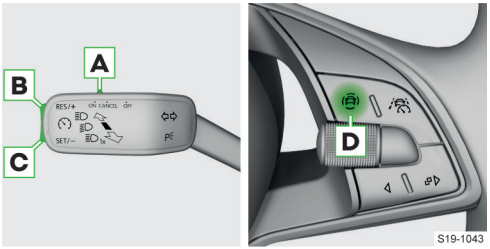
When the regulation starts LIM highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

OFF illuminates - the cruise control is deactivated.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation



A **ON** Activate cruise control (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

D Depending on the equipment: switch between speed limiter and GRA/ACC
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

---

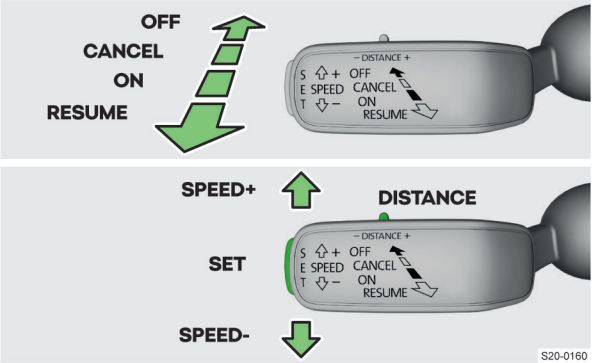
[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons B and C

By pressing in steps of **1 km/h**.

By holding in steps of **10 km/h**.

Variant with ACC



ON Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter)

RESUME Resume control [1] / Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Stop control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate the limiter

SPEED + Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

SET Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

Limit exceeded

› **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

! LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

▶ Deactivate cruise control after use.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminated - the cruise control system is activated

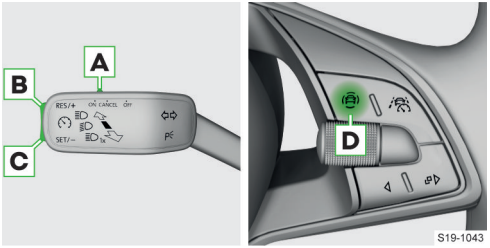
illuminated - cruise control is active
When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operating with the lever



A **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)
OFF Deactivate cruise control
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume cruise control[1]/Increase speed

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

D Switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

▸ After pressing the brake pedal
▸ After an ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

ACC control

ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

⚠ **WARNING**
ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

ⓘ ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

pACC (predictive cruise control)
pACC represents an extension of the ACC system.

pACC adjusts the speed according to recognized speed limits and the route, e.g. curves, intersections or roundabouts.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

- Navigation data
- Traffic Sign Recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ **WARNING**
pACC does not respond to railway crossings.

Speed range
Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 20-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 20 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level
The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ **WARNING**
- Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stop and start
The vehicle can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

To resume the regulation:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Set the lever in position **RESUME**.

Or:

› *Applies to vehicles with hand recognition on the steering wheel:* Grab the steering wheel again.

The control is interrupted when the brake pedal is depressed.

Overtaking
If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates - ACC is activated

illuminates - Control is active

When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.

illuminates - ACC is deactivated

illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed

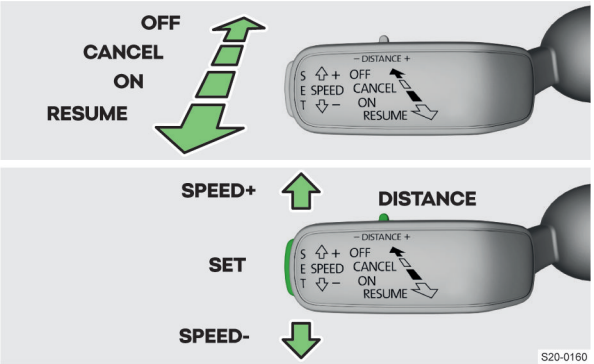
illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the road

Operation

Operating with the lever



ON	Activate ACC (control inactive)
RESUME	Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
CANCEL	Stop control (sprung position)
OFF	Deactivate ACC
SPEED +	Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
SPEED –	Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
DISTANCE	Set distance level
SET	Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Switching between ACC and speed limiter

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› In the instrument cluster select the desired menu.

Starting control with the current speed

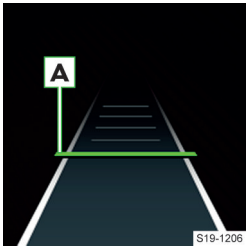
› Tap on SET.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position RESUME.

Set distance level

› Move the DISTANCE switch to the sprung position – or +.



Line A appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the DISTANCE switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

- ▶ After pressing the brake pedal
- ▶ After an ESC or ASR intervention

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:

- ▶ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▶ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

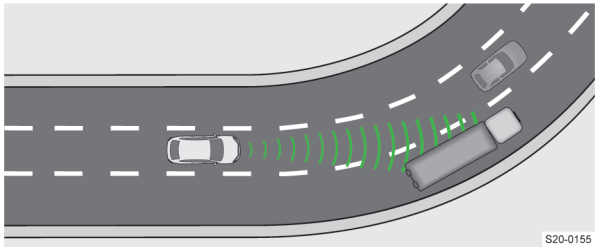
⚠ **WARNING**

- ▶ Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

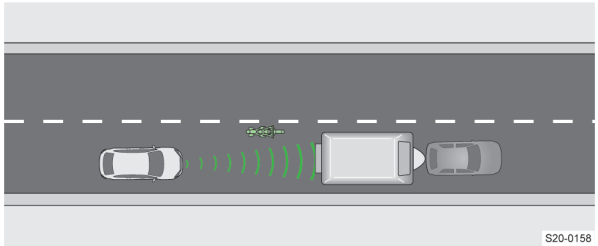
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



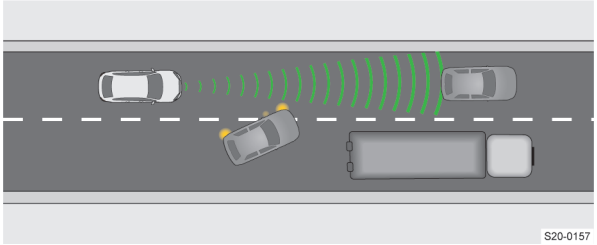
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



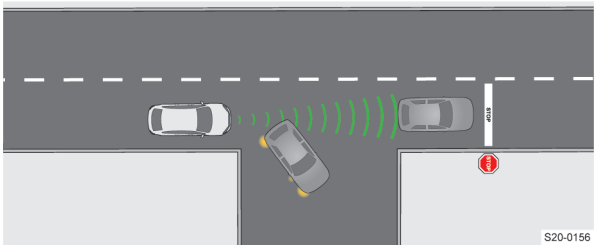
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC must not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu ▦ › ⊜ › ⚙.

- ⊜

  ▶ *Driving profile:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 157)

  ▶ *Last distance selected* - Switch on/off the last distance selected

  ▶ *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front

  ▶ *Road layout preview* - Switch the cruise control on/off according to the road profile (e.g. reduce speed before a bend)

  ▶ *Speed limit preview* - Switch the speed control on/off according to the permissible speed

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.

› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

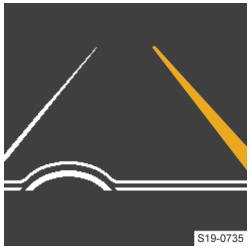
No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up - System intervenes

Display



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations
The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

- ▶ The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
- ▶ The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.
- › Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

- ▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▶ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▶ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation
Lane Assist is **always** automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment
In the menu ▦ › ⊕ › ⚙.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
- › Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
- › Switch the ignition off and on again after a short time.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Usage

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane while controlling the speed of the vehicle.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the functions Lane Assist and ACC.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
- ▶ The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC are to be taken into account.

Adaptive lane assist
This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control and adaptive lane guidance are active

is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control is active

is lit up – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is active

lights up - you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

lights up - you have released the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

Operating conditions

✓ The ACC is activated.
✓ The vehicle speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also note the ACC restrictions » page 175.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Regulation with the current speed and adaptive lane assist are started.

Deactivation
› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Set the ACC lever in position CANCEL » page 174.

ⓘ Additional settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Follow the troubleshooting instructions in case of Lane Assist » page 178 and ACC » page 176.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

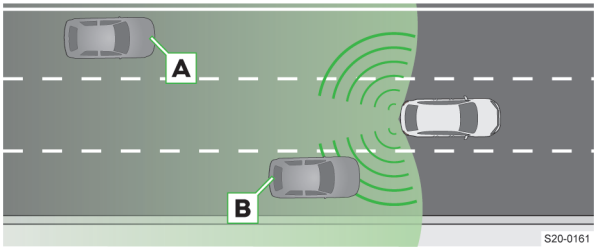
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashing** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

▶ The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
▶ The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
▶ A very fast approaching vehicle.
▶ The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In Infotainment
In the menu ▦ › ⚙ › .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ **WARNING**
Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

Functionality

Displayed road signs
▶ Speed limits
▶ Overtaking prohibited
▶ Driving bans – one-way traffic
▶ Danger sign
▶ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer
If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits
If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display

Example of additional characters

Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

ℹ At the same time, a red display regarding the speed limit appears in the speedometer.

Speed units
The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the 30 display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:
▶ The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is moving at high speed.
- The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting
In the Infotainment system, in the menu ▦ › ⊜ › ⚙.

- *Traffic Sign Recognition*
  - *Show in instrument cluster* - Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  - *Speed warning:* - Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  - *Warning at over* - Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed
- *Trailer detection*
  - *Show road signs relevant to trailers* Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  - *Use for route calculation* - Activation/deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
  - *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* - Setting the speed limits for trailer operation

Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
- The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

ⓘ The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact
Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Driver inactivity hazard
Applies to vehicles with assist systems for emergency situations.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger if the driver is inactive.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- When reversing
- If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or air-bag system
- If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Emergency Assist assist systems

Settings

Automatic activation
The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty
illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up ☕ from the isolation box.

⚠ **WARNING**
There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation
The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
- The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened
- The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
In the Infotainment system, in the menu ▦ › ⊜ › ⚙.

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- ▶ An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▶ If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- ▶ After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be initiated.

Interruption of automatic braking

- ▶ By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal
- ▶ By actively steering

Operating conditions

- ✓ Assist system for emergency situations is activated.
- ✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.

Settings

Automatic activation

The Assistant is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu ▦ › ⚙ › ⚙.

Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

Usage

Eco Assist supports an economical driving style with the help of instructions in the display of the instrument cluster.

Functionality

When the system detects that it is possible to drive more economically, the following information is shown in the display of the instrument cluster:

- ▶ Symbol for an approaching event. These include e.g. a speed limit, a crossing etc.
- ▶ - Recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

After releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle adapts the driving speed and recuperation to the current situation.

Pressing the rocker switch **–** or **+** on the steering wheel temporarily activates the manual selection of the recuperation level. Automatic recuperation is activated again by pressing the accelerator pedal » page 158.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

- Navigation data
- Traffic Sign Recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

Function restriction

The function cannot be used in the following cases:

- If the automatic distance control (ACC) is activated
- If the cruise control system is activated
- If Sport driving mode is selected

Settings

Activation/deactivation
In the Infotainment system, in the menu ▦ > ⊕ > ⚙.

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

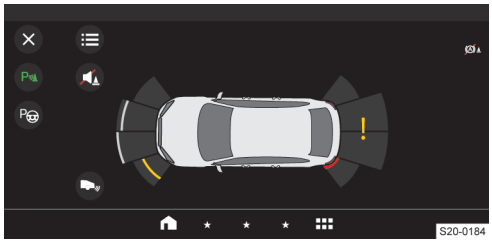
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



Acoustic signals on/off

One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking

Park steering assistant

Setting certain park assist systems

! System fault

Change to the rear view camera display

■ Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm

■ Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm

□ Obstacle outside the route

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.

▶ The detected obstacles are moving.

▶ Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.

▶ It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings menu is displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › › and tap the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear › in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface › .

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.

› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

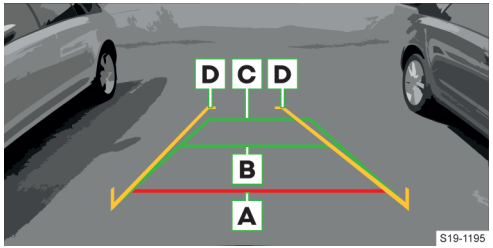
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

Orientation lines and functional surfaces

Orientation lines



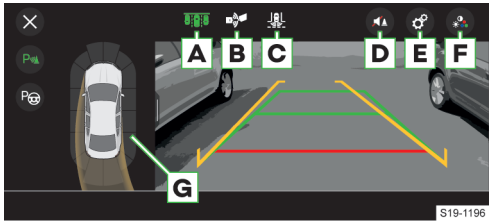
A Distance about 40 cm

B Distance about 100 cm

C Distance about 200 cm

D The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



A Mode for transverse parking
B Mode for driving up to a trailer
C Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
D Switching audible parking signals on/off
E Setting the parking aid
F Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display
G Parking Aid View

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

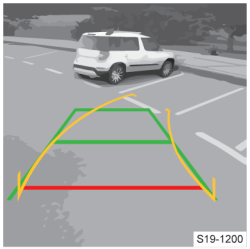
Switch on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › P/⚠ and tap the Infotainment screen.

Mode for transverse parking



› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.
› At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

Mode for driving up to a trailer

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. A line for approaching the trailer draw bar is displayed on the screen.

Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle

The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

Switch off the system

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface × on the Infotainment screen.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

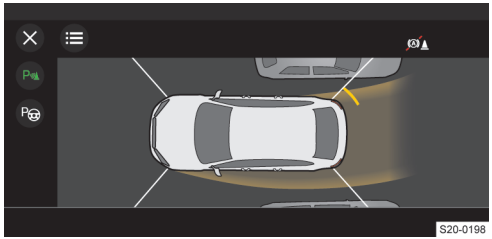
Area View, Top View

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

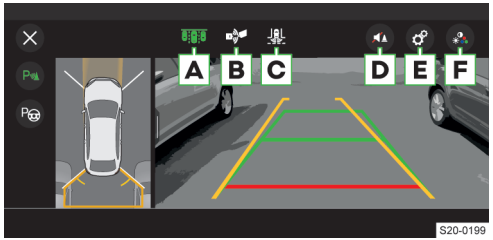
Overview

General overview



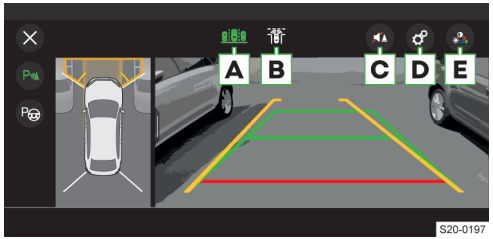
Selecting the camera image
The respective camera image is selected by touching the screen in the Infotainment in the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Camera rear view



- **A** Mode for transverse parking
- **B** Mode for driving up to a trailer
- **C** Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- **D** Switching audible parking signals on/off
- **E** Setting the parking aid
- **F** Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display

Front camera view



- **A** Mode for transverse parking

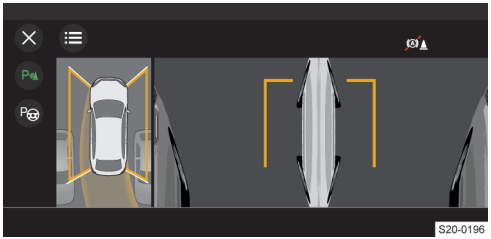
B Mode for monitoring the area in front of the vehicle (wide view)

C Switching audible parking signals on/off

D Setting the parking aid

E Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the image display

Side camera view



Left and right side

The yellow line is shown at a distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › P and tap the Infotainment screen.

Selecting the camera image

› In infotainment, tap the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off

› Press the P ASSIST button under the Infotainment.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface × on the Infotainment screen.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

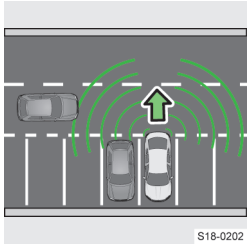
Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

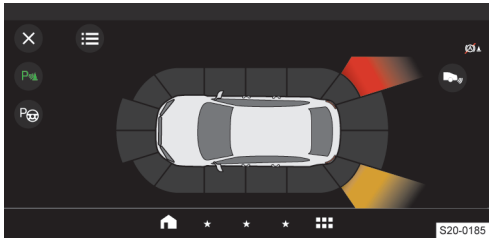


When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



■ Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

The activation/deactivation menu will be displayed as follows:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment > ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear › in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ☰ › ⚙.
› Select the manoeuvring assistant menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exit warning

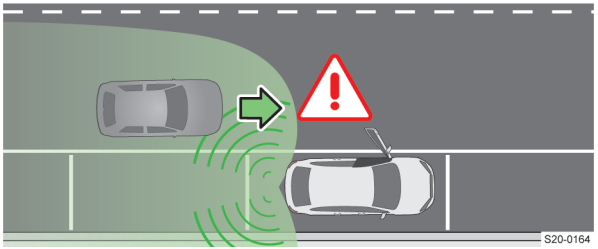
Usage

The assist system warns when opening the door in front of approaching objects, in order to avoid a possible collision.

Functionality

The assist system monitors the area beside and behind the vehicle up to a distance of approximately 35 m.

Situation in which a system warning occurs



Warning in the event of an impending collision
▸ The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will flicker and then light up.
▸ A warning signal sounds.

Warning in the event there is no immediate danger of collision
▸ The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will light up.

Requirements

✓ The vehicle does not move.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is faster than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the assistant will remain active for about 3 minutes.

Restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an approaching object, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- ▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▶ The field of vision of the sensors is limited by an obstacle.
- ▶ A very fast approaching object.

Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following:

› Press the P ASSIST button below the Infotainment › ⚙ and tap the Infotainment screen.

› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear › in the infotainment screen tap the functional surface ☰ › ⚙.

› Select the Exit Indicator menu item.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

High-voltage system

High-voltage system and high-voltage battery

What you should be mindful of

Warning stickers about high voltage

The warning stickers are located on high-voltage components.

Warning stickers relating to hot surfaces

The warning sticker is located on components that can become noticeably warm.

⚠ **DANGER**
Improper handling of the high-voltage system and battery can result in burns, injuries or fatal electric shock.

- ▶ It must always be assumed that the high-voltage battery is charged and that the high-voltage system is live. This also applies when the electric drive is switched off and the ignition is switched off.
- ▶ The components of the high-voltage system, e.g. the high-voltage cables and the high-voltage battery, neither catch on nor touch with the help of objects.
- ▶ Do not carry out any work on the high-voltage system or the high-voltage battery.
- ▶ Work on the high-voltage system and the systems influenced by it may only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
- ▶ Do not open or repair the components of the high-voltage system.
- ▶ Do not replace, remove or disconnect the orange high-voltage cables.
- ▶ Do not open, replace, or remove the cover of the high-voltage battery.
- ▶ Damage to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery can result in the escape of toxic and flammable gases. Open the windows to ensure that any gases are vented and exit the vehicle.
- ▶ Avoid contact with liquids and gases coming from the high-voltage battery.
- ▶ In the event of fire, leave the vehicle and stay at a safe distance. Inform rescuers about the fact that it is a vehicle with a high-voltage battery.» page 31, *After an accident*.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Touching the floor of the vehicle or an accident may damage the high-voltage battery.

- ▶ Contact a specialist company immediately and ensure the high-voltage battery is checked.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
In the event of a vehicle with a flat high-voltage battery, there is a risk of irreversible damage to the high-voltage battery during extended periods of use

- ▶ A flat high-voltage battery must be recharged immediately!

ⓘ **NOTICE**
If the vehicle is stationary for several months, the high-voltage battery can go flat.
This can lead to the high-voltage battery being damaged at high ambient temperatures and a low charge state.

- ▶ Always ensure there is a sufficient state of charge with the high-voltage battery!

ⓘ If the battery is left standing for long periods in very cold environments, the low internal temperature of the high-voltage battery can reduce the range and limit the driving performance.

High Voltage System Overview

The high-voltage system in the vehicle consists of the following main components:

- ▶ High-voltage battery
- ▶ Power electronics
- ▶ Electric motor
- ▶ High-voltage air-conditioning compressor
- ▶ Charger for the high-voltage battery
- ▶ Charging socket
- ▶ Orange high-voltage cable and plug
- ▶ High-voltage heating system

ⓘ The high-voltage battery is located under the vehicle floor and is not accessible to users.

Troubleshooting

Fault in electric drive system

illuminates
Message regarding fault in the electrical system

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates
Message regarding fault in the electrical system

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and switch off ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Electrical system overheated

illuminates together with

Message regarding overheating in the electrical system

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and switch off ignition.
› Do not top up with coolant!
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Charging of high-voltage battery

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

Danger of life-threatening electric shock, fire hazard, danger of damage to vehicle.

- Follow the correct procedure for charging.
- Connect the charging cable to a power outlet that is protected from both moisture and liquids.
- Only charge at correctly installed and undamaged sockets and at a faultless electrical installation. Have the sockets and electrical installations checked at regular intervals.
- Never charge in potentially explosive areas. Components of the charging cable can cause sparks and thus ignite explosive vapours.
- Protect the charging plugs from moisture and liquids.
- Do not carry out work on the vehicle while charging.
- Always remove the charging cable before turning on ignition. Fit the protective cap and close the battery charging flap.
- Never charge several vehicles at the same time at the mains sockets of a fuse circuit.
- Observe the maximum charge capacity of the fuse circuit used. If the charging cable is plugged into a socket of the same circuit together with other consumers, the circuit may be overloaded and the charging process may be interrupted.

⚠ **WARNING**

- Never use damaged charging plugs or charging cables.

NOTICE

When fast charging with direct current (DC), the charging process is carried out using a very high charging current. Frequent rapid charging (DC) can permanently reduce the charging capacity of the high-voltage battery.

- Charge the high-voltage battery predominantly with alternating current (AC) in the charging range of 7.2 to 11 kW.

NOTICE

Long periods with the vehicle left standing with a fully charged high-voltage battery for several months can lead to a permanent reduction in the charging capacity of the high-voltage battery.

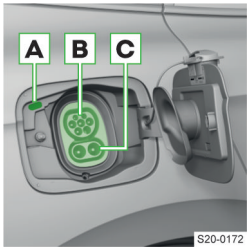
- Avoid prolonged vehicle downtimes when the high-voltage battery is at a high state of charge.

At very low and very high temperatures, there may be restrictions when charging the high-voltage battery. The charging time may be longer.

As the state of charge of the high-voltage battery increases, the ability of the high-voltage battery to absorb energy decreases. This slows down the charging process.

Overview

Charging socket and charging indicator



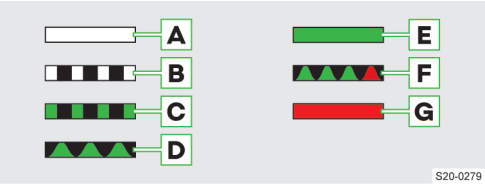
A Charging indicator

B Charging socket (AC alternating current)

C Charging socket (DC direct current)

The charging process indicator also helps in illuminating the charging socket.

Charging indicator



A **White light illuminates** - The vehicle is parked and unlocked, the battery flap is open

B **Flashes white** - The charging plug has been inserted into the charging socket and the connection is established between the vehicle and the charging point

C **Flashes green** - Time-delayed charging is activated, but has not started yet.

D **Green light pulsating** - high-voltage battery is charging

E **Green light glows** - high-voltage battery is charged, charging process is complete

F **Pulses green three times and then red once** - as a result of a fault, the charging plug is not locked in the charging socket » page 200, *Troubleshooting*

G **Lights up red**

- ▶ Charging plug is not locked into the charging socket » page 200, *Troubleshooting*.
- ▶ No power supply was detected. » page 200, *Troubleshooting*.
- ▶ Fault with the charging system of the vehicle » page 200, *Troubleshooting*.

Information label on the battery charging flap

The sign provides information about the compatibility of the vehicle's charging components and the charging location.

C Label of plug type for alternating current charging (AC).

K Identification of the connector type for charging with direct current DC

Charging options

- ▶ Public charging station (AC alternating current
- ▶ Home Charging Station - Wall box (AC alternating current)
- ▶ Fast charging at charging station (DC direct current)
- ▶ Charging at a usual mains socket or industrial socket

Home charging station (wall box) and universal charging cable

When charging with a home charging station or when using the universal charging cable » page 206, *Overview* a higher charging capacity is achieved than with a normal mains socket. The charging time is considerably shortened.

ⓘ For information about purchasing a suitable home charging station (Wall box) or universal charging cable, please ask a ŠKODA partner.

NOTICE

The installation of the home charging station (wall box) must be carried out by qualified personnel.

- ▶ Before installing the home charging station, ensure the electrical installation of the house is checked.
- ▶ Ensure the electrical installation and the home charging station are checked regularly by qualified personnel.

Charging

WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

- ▶ Follow the correct procedure for charging. Do not disconnect the charging cable during charging.
- ▶ Never use the charging cable with an extension cord, power strip, adapter or timer.

NOTICE

- ▶ To operate the charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

Before charging

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Switch off the ignition.

ⓘ If the ignition does not necessarily need to be switched on, switch it off before charging begins. Leaving the ignition switched on can extend the charging time.

› Fully unwind the charging station cable.

Or:

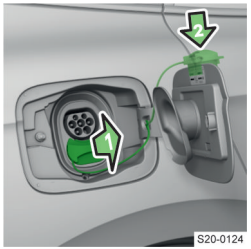
› Fully unwind the charging cable and connect it to the charger socket or to a standard mains socket/industrial socket.

Connect the charging cable

› Unlock the vehicle. The battery flap is unlocked.

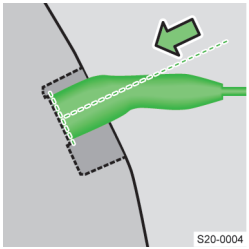
S20-0119

› Press on the battery flap to open it.



S20-0124

› To charge using direct current DC, remove the protective cap of the charging socket (DC).


S20-0004

› Insert the charging plug for the charging cable into the charging socket.

› Check whether the charging plug is straight and fully inserted in the charging socket.

The charging plug remains automatically locked in the charging socket.

Start the charging process

Charging starts automatically after connecting the charging cable.

Or:

› If necessary, start off the charging process at the charging station.

Charging indicator

▶ The charging indicator on the charging socket pulsates green.

▶ The remaining charge time is shown on the instrument cluster display and it flashes.

Charging with alternating current (AC)

Interrupt the charging process

› Tap the functional surface for immediate termination of the charging process in the menu for the charging process setting in the infotainment » page 202.

The charging process is interrupted. The charging plug remains locked in the charging socket.

› To restart the charging process, tap the functional surface again to immediately start the charging process in the infotainment » page 202.

End the charging process

› Press the button on the key.

The charging process is interrupted, the charging plug is unlocked for 30 s and can be removed.

The charging plug is locked again after 30 s. If the upper battery charge limit has not been reached, charging will continue.

Or:

› To end the charging process at the charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

The charging plug remains locked in the charging socket and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

After reaching the upper charging limit, the charging process is automatically ended. If the option to automatically release the charging cable connector is selected, » page 202, the plug is unlocked and remains unlocked. Otherwise it remains locked and must be unlocked by pressing the button the key.

Charging with direct current (DC)
End the charging process

› To end the charging process at the charging station, follow the instructions on the charging station.

When the charging process is complete, the charging plug is automatically unlocked.

Or:

› Tap the functional surface for immediate termination of the charging process in the menu for the charging process setting in the infotainment » page 202.

The charging process is ended. The charging plug remains locked in the charging socket and must be unlocked by pressing the button on the key.

In order to start the charging process again, the charging plug must be removed and the charging process then started completely from the beginning.

After reaching the upper charging limit, the charging process is automatically ended. The charging plug is unlocked in the charging socket and can be removed.

After the charging process

› If the charging plug is not automatically unlocked or locked again after the charging process has been completed, it can be unlocked with the button on the key.
› Disconnect the charging plug from the charging socket.
› Attach the protective cap to the charging socket.
› Close the battery flap.
› Where necessary, disconnect the charging cable from the charger or from the mains socket.

If you leave the charging cable connected after charging using alternating current (AC), the high-voltage battery will not be discharged by electrical consumers in the vehicle. These consumers are powered by the charger.

Initial charging and charging for longer service life

If the high-voltage battery is new or has not been charged for a long time, the maximum state of charge of the high-voltage bat-

tery may only be reached after several charges. This is due to technical reasons and does not constitute a malfunction.

NOTICE

Danger of irreversible damage to the high-voltage battery.

▶ If the vehicle is not used for a long period of time, charge the high-voltage battery after a maximum of four months.

Setting the charging process

Adjustments to applications

The following applications can be used, for example, to set the delayed charge (departure time) or the lower battery charge limit:

▶ Charging process » page 202, *Overview*

▶ ŠKODA Connect application » page 151, *Functionality*

Prerequisites for starting time-delayed charging

✓ The vehicle is connected to a charger that supports time-delayed charging.

✓ Time-delayed charging is activated in the application setting.» page 202, *Overview*.

ⓘ If, after the vehicle has been connected to the charger, the state of charge is lower than the set lower battery charge limit, the high-voltage battery is charged immediately to the set charge limit.

Troubleshooting

Low state of charge of the high-voltage battery

illuminates

› The high-voltage battery is charging.

Charging does not start or is cancelled

A message indicating that no charging is possible is displayed.

› Disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle and plug it in again.

Or:

› Use another charging option.

› If the charging process does not start or is interrupted again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The charging process does not start, the state of charge does not increase

The charging indicator on the charging socket illuminates or pulsates green.

› Check whether the set upper battery charge limit has not yet been reached the charging process in the main screen for the charging process setting in the infotainment » page 202, *Overview*.

› Set a new upper limit and start the charging process again.

Or:

The charging indicator on the charging socket blinks green.

› Check whether the delayed charging function is not active » page 203, *Setting the charging points*.

› Deactivate the function if the charging process should start immediately.

Or:

The charging indicator on the charging socket illuminates white. The loading process was ended manually.

› Start the charging process again.

Or:

The charging indicator on the charging socket blinks white. The charging process is being initialized.

› Wait for the charging process to start.

Or:

The charging indicator on the charging socket illuminates red.

› Check the following requirements:

- The charging station or the cable are connected to the mains and do not display any warnings or error messages.
- You are properly authorized if the charging station requires it.
- The cable is connected and properly locked in the charging socket.
- The vehicle does not display any error messages relating to the high-voltage system.

› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fast charging with DC is not possible
A message indicating that no fast-charging is possible is displayed.

› Charge the high-voltage battery using alternating current.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Charging time increases
If the high-voltage battery is too hot after driving, the charging current can be systematically reduced by subsequent charging in order to protect the high-voltage battery from overheating. This lengthens the charging time.

› Check whether there is a reduced charging current (AC) is possibly not set in the charger (wall box, universal charging cable) in the menu for the charging process setting in the infotainment » page 202, *Overview*.
› Check whether emergency charging (AC) is not active.

Charging has ended unexpectedly
› Check whether the upper battery charge limit has not been reached.
› If there is an error message, also check the charging station, try another charging station if necessary.

The charging plug is not locked
The charging indicator in the charging socket pulses green three times and then red once.

As a result of a fault, the charging plug is not locked in the charging socket and the vehicle is emergency charged with a significantly lower charging current.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Or:

The charging indicator on the charging socket illuminates red.

› Disconnect the charging plug and insert it again into the charging socket until it stops.
› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Charging plug cannot be pulled out
The charging plug is too hot.

› Wait until the charging plug has cooled down.

Or:

There is a malfunction in the locking mechanism of the charging socket.

› Disconnect the charging cable by manually unlocking it.
› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Manual release of the charging plug from the charging socket
If the charging plug remains locked in the charging socket, after charging is completed and the button 🔓 is pressed proceed as follows:

› Check that the charging process is interrupted.
› Open the boot lid.

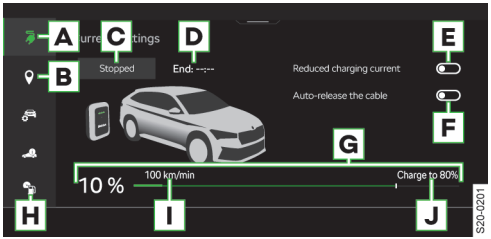
› Press the perforated part on the right side panel of the luggage compartment with your fingers.
› Pull the perforated part outwards.

› Pull the lug in the direction of the arrow to unlock the charging plug.
› Then disconnect the charging plug from the charging socket.
› Have the vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Contact a specialist company if problems persist.

Adjust charging in Infotainment

Overview



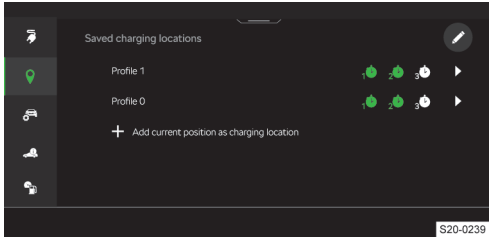
A Charge indicator with pre-set options and information
B Charging points » page 203, *Setting the charging points*
C Immediate start / cancellation of the charging process
D Estimated time of completion of the charging process
E *Applies to AC charging (AC).*
Activation / deactivation of the reduced charging current
F *Applies to AC charging (AC).*
Activation / deactivation of the automatic release of the charging cable connector
G Charging status of the high-voltage battery
H Information about average consumption and range » page 97, *Overview*
I Current charging speed
J Upper limit of battery charging

Setting the charging points

By setting the charging points, the departure time and the preferred charging points are also set, e.g. at home or at work.

› Tap on 📍.

The following menu is displayed:



› Select one of the pre-set options for setting the departure time.

In the displayed pre-selection option, you can use the functional surface ▶ to set or switch on following menu items:

- ▶ Departure time
- ▶ Weekday(s)
- ▶ Repeat for the selected weekday(s)
- ▶ Interior cooling / heating
- ▶ Reduced charging current
- ▶ Instant charging up to a certain value

  The charging process starts immediately when the state of charge of the high-voltage battery falls below the set value.
- ▶ Charging up to a certain value
- ▶ Low tariff
- ▶ Time lapse for low tariff
- ▶ Automatic unlocking of the charging cable connector

› Activate/deactivate the selected preselection option.

ⓘ The preselection option can be renamed according to the preferred location by tapping the icon ✎.

ⓘ The charging process is also set in the ŠKODA Connect application » page 151, *Functionality*.

Charging cable

What you should be mindful of

We recommend that you only use charging cables supplied by ŠKODA AUTO. With these, the reliability as well as correct functionality are guaranteed.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of short circuit as well as serious or fatal injuries!

- ▶ Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- ▶ Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Information on the use of the charging cable

- ▶ Protect the parts of the charging cable from unwanted stress, e.g. from overrunning, falling, pulling, kinking or bending over sharp edges.
- ▶ When disconnecting from the socket or charger, do not pull on the cable but only on the plug.
- ▶ After using the charging cable, insert the protective caps.

- Protect the parts of the charging cable from intense sunlight (the outside temperature must not exceed 50 °C).
- Do not immerse parts of the charging cable in water and ensure it is protected from snow or ice.
- Before charging at cold temperatures, attach the supplied protective ring to the charging plug. This protects the plug-charging socket connection from freezing.

Before driving abroad
There may be the following country-specific differences in electrical installations:

- Type of power sockets in the household and their use in various electrical installations
- Type of power supply connection including measures in the event of malfunctions as well as protective measures against electric shock (e.g. earthed network in the EU countries vs. isolated network in Norway) » page 206, *Functionality*

Check whether your charging cable is suitable for the specific procedures in places in each country. If you are unclear or have questions about the types of plugs and sockets, we recommend visiting a ŠKODA service partner.

Charging cable type

- Charging cable for charging stations (Mode 3)
- Universal charging cable » page 204, *Usage*

Charging cable for charging stations (Mode 3)

The charging cable can be used to charge vehicles at public AC charging stations that do not have an integrated charging cable.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and charging cable type, charging is possible with a maximum charging current of 16A or 32A.

At some charging stations that offer charging with a charging current of 32 A, charging with a cable intended for charging with a charging current of 16 A is not possible.

Stow charging cable

› Store the charging cables in the stowage compartments for cables in the luggage compartment:

- Storage compartment for the charging cable » page 232
- Organiser under the variable loading floor » page 239
- Charging cable pocket » page 239

Universal charging cable

Usage

With the interchangeable universal charging cable, charging is possible both at charging stations and at standard mains sockets/industrial sockets.

What you should be mindful of

We recommend that you only use charging cables supplied by ŠKODA AUTO. With these, the reliability as well as correct functionality are guaranteed.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of short circuit as well as serious or fatal injuries!

- Only use a suitable charging cable to charge the high-voltage battery.
- Never use the charging cable with an extension cord, cable drum power strip, adapter or timer.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- Have the charging cable checked regularly by a qualified service technician.

Warning symbols

- Use the charging cable in a temperature range of -30 °C to +50 °C.
- Use the charging cable up to max. 4000m above sea level.
- The charging cable has a switched protective conductor.
- Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.
- Do not use the charging cable together with extension cables and cable drums.
- Do not use the charging cable together with a power strip.
- Risk of electric shock if used improperly.
- Observe related operating instructions, in particular warning and safety instructions.

Information on the use of the charging cable

- Protect the parts of the charging cable from unwanted stress, e.g. from overrunning, falling, pulling, kinking or bending over sharp edges.
- When disconnecting from the socket or charger, do not pull on the cable but only on the plug.
- After using the charging cable, insert the protective caps.
- Protect the parts of the charging cable from intense sunlight (the outside temperature must not exceed 50 °C).
- Do not immerse parts of the charging cable in water and ensure it is protected from snow or ice.

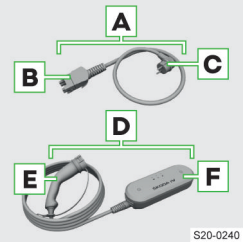
Before driving abroad

There may be the following country-specific differences in electrical installations:

- Type of power sockets in the household and their distribution in various electrical installations
- Type of power supply connection including measures in the event of malfunctions as well as protective measures against electric shock (e.g. earthed network in the EU countries vs. isolated network in Norway) » page 206, *Functionality*

Check whether your charging cable is suitable for the specific procedures in places in each country. If you are unclear or have questions about the types of plugs and sockets, we recommend visiting a ŠKODA service partner.

Overview



A Interchangeable charging cable

B Replaceable charging cable connector

C Plug for connection to the mains

D Charging cable with control box

E Plug in the vehicle's charging socket

F Control box

Stow charging cable

› Store the charging cable in the stowage compartments for cables in the luggage compartment:

▸ Storage compartment for the charging cable » page 232

▸ Organiser under the variable loading floor » page 239

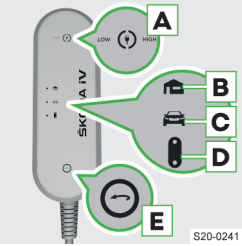
▸ Charging cable pocket » page 239

Functionality

Control box

Through the control box, the charging plug is de-energised until it is plugged into the charging socket of the vehicle.

When the charging cable is connected to the power outlet, the control box automatically carries out a self-test. All warning and indicator lights illuminate briefly and go out one after the other.



A On / off button with indicator light and function of charge current limitation

B Indicator light power plug (plugged into the mains socket)

C Indicator light vehicle

D Indicator light control box

E Reset button with indicator light

A illuminates	Charging cable connected to the mains.
A pulsates	High-voltage battery is charging.

Charge current limitation

The charging current limitation helps in preventing overheating of the charging cable for instance.

› Hold the button A for maximum 2 s.

The indicator light flashes green once the charge current value has been set B.

The set reduced value (LOW) is displayed to the left of the button A.

The set non-reduced value (HIGH) is displayed to the right of the button A.

ⓘ The universal charging cable is factory-set to the limited charging current. The next time the cable is used, the value set last is used.

Deactivating/activating protective conductor monitoring

Use the universal charging cable in correctly earthed power systems with activated protective conductor monitoring.

Deactivate protective conductor monitoring if the power supply is not grounded:

› Hold the buttons ⊕ and ⊖ until the indicator light flashes six times.

› After a second, hold the buttons ⊕ and ⊖ again until the indicator light flashes six times.

Activate protective conductor monitoring if the power supply is grounded:

› Hold the buttons ⊕ and ⊖ until the indicator light flashes six times.

The indicator lights and go out and ⊕ pulsates green.

Operation

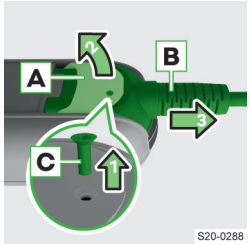
⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
Before handling the cables:

▸ The charging process for the high-voltage battery has been completed

▸ The charging plug must be removed from the vehicle's charging socket

▸ The charging cable must be disconnected from the socket

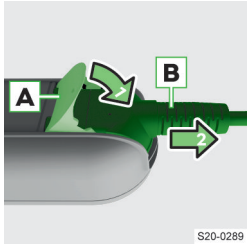
Disconnect the replaceable charging cable from the control box



› Remove screw C.

› Open the cover cap A.

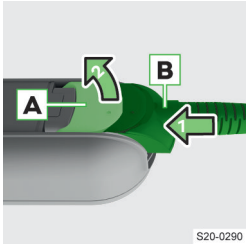
› Partially pull out plug B.



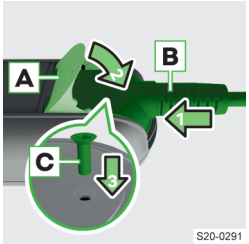
› Close the cover cap A.

› Pull out the plug B completely.

Connect the replaceable charging cable to the control box



› Insert the plug B partially into the control box.
› Open the cover cap A.



› Insert the plug B as far as it will go.
› Close the cover cap A.
› Screw in the screw C.

Start the charging process

› Fully unwind the charging cable and connect it to the charger socket or to a standard mains socket.

All indicator lights briefly light up red.

› Insert the charging cable plug into the charging socket.

The on / off indicator lamp lights up yellow. After a successful self-test, all indicator lights light up green for two seconds.

The charging process starts automatically.

ⓘ Further information can be found in the chapter Loading » page 197, *Charging*.

Troubleshooting

The plug for the power supply connection is overheated

The indicator light pulsates green and lights up yellow. The charging current is limited. After cooling down, the error is automatically fixed and the charging process continues.

› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Standard mains socket is overheated

The indicator light lights up in red and lights up yellow. The charging current is limited. After cooling down, the error is automatically fixed and the charging process continues.

› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Power supply is limited

The indicator light lights up in red and flashes yellow. The charging process is interrupted. After the power supply stabilization, the error is automatically remedied and the charging process continues.

› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Power grid is overloaded

The indicator light lights up in red and flashes red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect after 60 s.
› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Power supply is insufficient
The indicator light lights up in red and and flash red. The protective conductor is interrupted or does not exist. The charging process is interrupted.

› If you have a grounded power supply, get the help of a specialist company and have the power supply checked by a specialist.

› Deactivate protective conductor monitoring if the power supply is not grounded » page 206, *Functionality*.

Power supply is incorrectly connected
The indicator light lights up in red and , and flash red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable.
› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Control box has detected fault current
The indicator light , , and lights up in red and flashes red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Press the key for a few seconds.
› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.
› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Control box is overheated
The indicator light pulsates green and lights up yellow. The charging current is limited.

Or:

The indicator light lights up in red and lights up yellow. The charging process is interrupted.

After cooling down, the error is automatically fixed and the charging process continues.

› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Control box error
The indicator light lights up in red and flashes red. The charging process is interrupted.

Or:

The indicator lights and light up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

Or:

The indicator lights , , , and light up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect after 60 s.
› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.
› Have the power supply checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Fatal error on the control box
The indicator light flashes red and lights up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Deactivated protective conductor monitoring
The indicator light pulsates green and and light up in yellow.

› Activate protective conductor monitoring in a grounded power supply system » page 206, *Functionality*.

There is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system
The indicator light lights up in red and flashes yellow. The charging process is interrupted. After the power supply stabilization, the error is automatically remedied and the charging process continues.

› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Or:

The indicator lights and light up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Disconnect the charging cable and reconnect after 60 s.
› If the problem persists, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Charging cable error
The indicator light lights up in red and flashes yellow. The charging process is interrupted.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Faulty indicator lamp display
The indicator lights , and and light up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

Or:

The indicator lights , , and light up in red. The charging process is interrupted.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

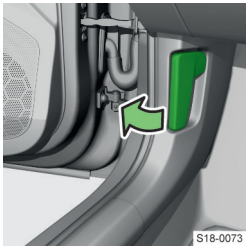
Space under the front flap

Front flap

Open front flap

Before opening
› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
› Keep everyone away from the space under the front flap.

Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.

› Release the lock.

› Open the bonnet.
› Remove the bonnet stay from the holder and insert the end of the stay into the opening in the bonnet.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet.
› Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
› Fold the bonnet down and release it with a distance of 30 cm remaining.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

▸ Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
▸ Open and close the flap again.

Coolant

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ Ignition off

Checking the level

The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the space under the front flap!

▸ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

▸ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.

▸ Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap immediately after the ignition is stopped and turned off.

› Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification
To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lights up or flashes – the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low

› Check the coolant level.

The coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 220.

The fuse is OK, the indicator light comes on or flashes again:

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available
› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant
› Stop driving.
› Turn ignition off and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant
› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery

Wear safety goggles!

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!

When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!

Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!

Refer to the owner's manual!

Functionality - Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

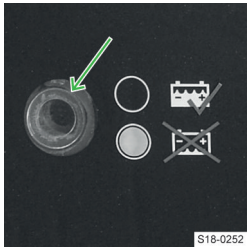
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



› Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.

- Black colour - the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

Charging

The 12-volt vehicle battery is automatically charged when the high-voltage battery is charged.

If required, the 12 volt vehicle battery can be charged using a 12 volt charger.

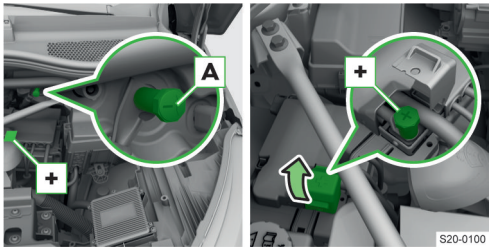
Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

✓ Ignition off

✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Under the front flap: Earth point and ⊕-pole for battery charging

A Earth point

+ ⊕-pole for charging the 12 volt vehicle battery (under the cover cap)

› Open the cover cap of the ⊕- pole for battery charging.
› Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ pole for battery charging.
› Connect the ⊖terminal of the charger to the earth point A.
› Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
› After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
› Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.
› Lock the cover cap of the ⊕-pole for battery charging into place.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of explosion!

▶ During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
▶ Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.
▶ Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

Fault in charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop driving!
› Turn ignition off and seek the help of a specialist garage.

12 volt vehicle battery fault

illuminates together with ⚠

A message in the display of the instrument cluster indicating a fault on the 12 volt vehicle battery or on secondary systems.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The state of charge of the 12 volt vehicle battery is insufficient

illuminates together with ⚠
A message in the display of the instrument cluster regarding low charge or discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› Travel a distance of several kilometres to charge the 12 volt vehicle battery.

Or:

› Charge the vehicle using a charger.

Or:

› Charge the 12 volt vehicle battery with a charger.

Worn 12 volt vehicle battery

illuminates together with ⚠
A message in the display of the instrument cluster regarding exchange of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

The connection cables of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not accessible. The 12 volt vehicle battery may only be disconnected and connected by a specialist company.

Changing
The new 12 volt vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

Usage

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be put into operation using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

▶ Do not operate the vehicle with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  ▶ The discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12 volt vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.
  ▶ The acid level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » page 213.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

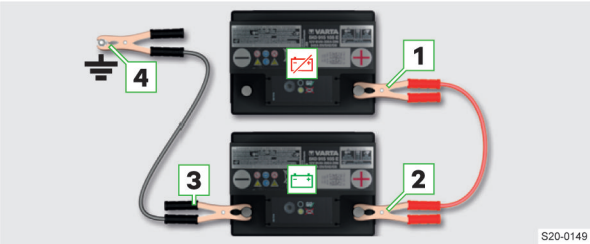
The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the 12 volt charging vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!
- Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Short circuit!
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
- The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
- The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable
› Switch off the ignition.
› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

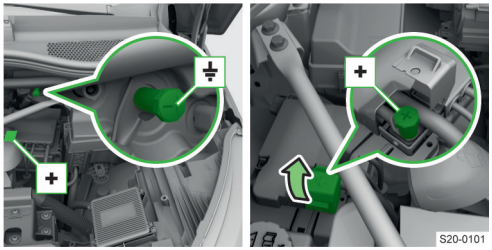
current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 ⊕-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 ⊖-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



Under the front flap: Ground point / ⊕-pole of the 12-volt vehicle battery (under the cover cap)

Start the vehicle
› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)

Or:
› Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).
› Switch on the ignition of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› If the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is not ready to run within 10 s, repeat the process again after approximately 30 s.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.
- Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

High-voltage system fuse (fuse for rescue workers)

The high-voltage system fuse is provided with a yellow sticker so that the emergency services can switch off the high-voltage in the vehicle as quickly as possible.

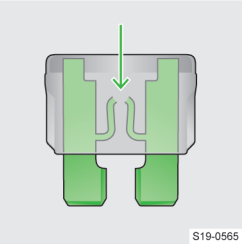
WARNING

Danger to life or risk of an electric shock and serious burns!

- Do not change the high-voltage system fuse yourself!
- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.

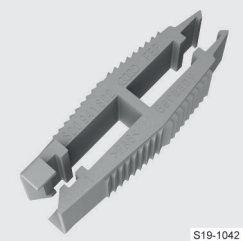


Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition off
✓ Driver door opened
✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clip located under the cover of the fuse box in the space under the front flap.
› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to fuses – left-hand drive

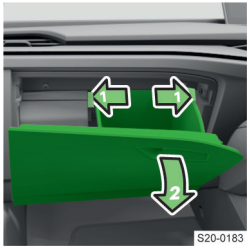
› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.

› Press the locking lugs and open the tray.
› Change the fuse.
› Close the storage compartment.

Access to fuses – right-hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.

› Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



› Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.

› Open the fuse box cover.
› Change the fuse.
› Close the fuse box cover.
› Insert and lock the brake rod.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses overview

Fuse number	Consumer
1	230 volt socket
2	Airbags
3	Tow hitch
4	Front camera for assistance systems
5	Vehicle exterior lighting
6	Interior lighting
7	Heating of the front seats
8	Sliding/tilting roof
9	Window lifter (left vehicle side), central locking (left front door), left exterior mirror (heater, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
10	Not used
11	Tow hitch
12	Not used
13	Central locking (rear doors and boot lid flap), windscreen washer system, headlight cleaning system

Fuse number	Consumer
14	Music amplifier
15	Not used
16	Not used
17	Rear radar sensors
18	Steering column lock, KESSY (keyless locking system), contactless operation of the electric luggage compartment lid
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, online services
20	Phonebox, USB-connections at the front
21	Rear view camera, Top View
22	Engine control system
23	Communication system
24	Not used
25	Driver belt tensioners
26	Window lifter – right vehicle side, central locking (right front door), right exterior mirror (heater, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
27	Passenger belt tensioners
28	High-voltage battery control system - safe shutdown of the high-voltage system The fuse can only be changed by a specialist company!
29	Tow hitch
30	Infotainment
31	Tow hitch
32	Vehicle exterior lighting
33	Not used
34	Air conditioning
35	Seat heating - rear
36	Fan for heating/air conditioning

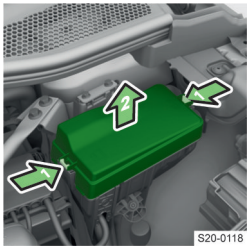
Fuse number	Consumer
37	Electric boot lid
38	Seat ventilation
39	Heated steering wheel
40	Alarm horn
41	Databus
42	Transmission operation, transmission mode display
43	Front air conditioning, rear air conditioning, rear window heating
44	Front interior lighting, parking brake, rain light sensor, operation of the light function, alarm system, diagnostic connection, button bar in the control panel
45	Control lever under the steering wheel
46	Infotainment screen, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
48	Rear USB
49	Not used
50	Not used
51	Not used
52	12 volt socket in the luggage compartment
53	Not used
54	Not used
55	Not used
56	Not used
57	Not used
58	Parking aid (Park Assist)
59	Air conditioning + heating, interior mirror with automatic dimming, USB at the rear
60	Diagnostic connection
61	Drive system
62	Not used

Fuse number	Consumer
63	Not used
64	Not used
65	Not used
66	Rear window wiper
67	Heated rear window

Fuses in the space under the front flap

Overview

Access to the fuses



› Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
› Change the fuse.
› Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE
Danger of water entering the fuse box.
▸ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview

Fuse number	Consumer
1	Not used
2	Assistance system ESC, BDM control system, coil of the main relay
3	Charger for the high-voltage battery, electric drive
4	Left headlight
5	Right headlight
6	Radar sensor in the front
7	Not used
8	Not used
9	Horn
10	Windscreen wiper
11	Air conditioning
12	Engine sound generator
13	Assistance system ESC
14	Not used

Fuse number	Consumer
15	Assistance system ESC
16	Radiator fan
17	Heated windscreen
18	Not used
19	Not used
20	Not used
21	Not used
22	Not used
23	Engine control system
24	Radiator fan
25	Coolant pump, electric heating
26	Coolant pump, radiator shutter
27	Not used
28	Not used
29	Not used
30	Not used
31	Not used
32	Brake servo

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

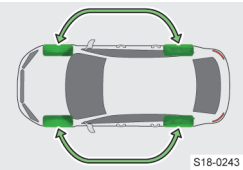
- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
- Do not use light alloy rims with a high-sheen surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Improper tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration).
- Wheel alignment errors.
- Incorrect wheel balancing.

Wheel changes

Applies to vehicles with 132 kW electric engine.



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Applies to vehicles with 150 kW electric engine.

WARNING

Vehicles with a 150 kW electric motor have different tire sizes on the front and rear axles.

- Do not exchange wheels on these vehicles.

Advice for tyre assembly

- With directional tires, the correct direction of rotation must be observed. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.
- Always replace the tyres by the axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

e.g. 235/55 R 19 101 T

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
19 Diameter of wheel in inches
101 Load index
T Speed symbol

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg

Speed symbol
The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ **WARNING**
▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tires.

Tread wear indicators

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters TWI or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

ⓘ The tread depth can be measured using a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the boot lid.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▶ Do not use worn tires.

Tyre manufacturing date
The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 18 20 means that the tyres were produced in the 18th week of the year 2020.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre
▶ Breakdown kit » page 227.

Change of tyre pressure

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

› In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.

› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu > > >. *Outside*.

› By moving your finger sideways, choose the screen with the menu item *Tyres* .

› Select *Tyres* – select them and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

▶ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

› Only mount the snow chains on the rear wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
8Jx19 ET45	235/55 R19
8Jx19 ET45	255/50 R19

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 9 mm.

SEAL tyres

Usage

The SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tires, the vehicle must have one of the following pieces of equipment.

- Spare or emergency spare wheel with corresponding tool for replacing it.
- Breakdown kit.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors, the boot and front flap.
› Uncouple any trailers.

Raise vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**

Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

- Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- Do not turn on ignition of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Danger of damage to vehicle!

- Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed

› Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
› In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Release screws

› If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

⚠ **WARNING**
- If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

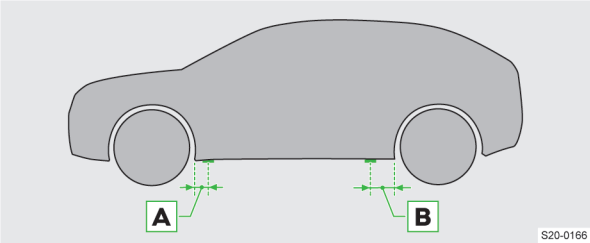
Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.

› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

› Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.

› Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

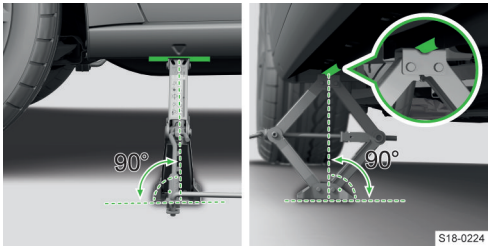
Jacking points for the jack



A 18 cm

B 30 cm

Position the jack and lift the vehicle



- Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
- Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
- Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel

- Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel carefully.
- Attach the wheel.
- Slightly screw in the screws.
- Lower the vehicle.

NOTICE

▸ Applies to wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories: the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tighten screws

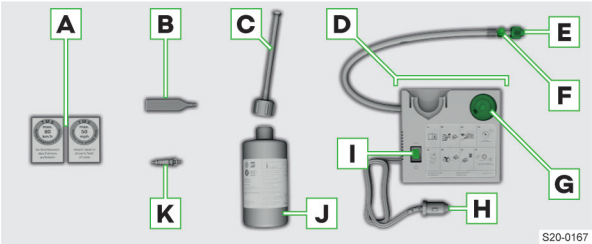
- Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
- Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



- **A** Sticker with speed indication
- **B** Valve remover
- **C** Inflation hose with plug

D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)

E Tyre inflation hose

F Button for pressure reduction

G Pressure indicator

H 12 volt cable connector

I ON and OFF switch

J Tyre inflation bottle

K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

› Switch off the ignition.

› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.

› Close all doors, the boot and front flap.

› Uncouple any trailers.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

› Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

› Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

› The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

› If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the compressor!

▶ After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

WARNING

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

▶ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

▶ The rim is damaged.

- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
- Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.
› Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.
› Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the valve.
› Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

› Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
› Turn on the air compressor.
› Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

› If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
› Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
› Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
- Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
- After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

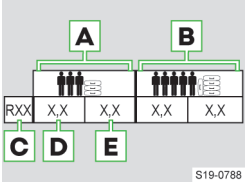
WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with the prescribed tyre pressure values is located in the centre body pillar on the driver's side.



A Inflation pressure for half load

B Inflation pressure for a full load

C Tyre diameter in inches
This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC document).

D Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres

E Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› Select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition in menu > > .

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

▸ Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached
▸ Sporty driving style
▸ Driving on dirt roads
▸ Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Saving tyre pressure values

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment.

› In the displayed menu in Infotainment, tap the functional surface SET.

› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressures in the following cases:

▸ Change of tyre pressure
▸ Change of one or more wheels
▸ Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
▸ Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure display faulty

flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the car, turn the ignition off and on again.

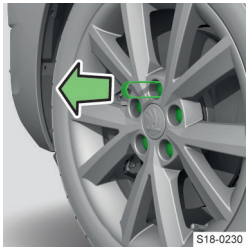
If the symbol flashes again after turning on ignition, there is a system fault.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.

› Remove the cover cap.

Installing

› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Applies to factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

Disconnecting

› Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.

› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

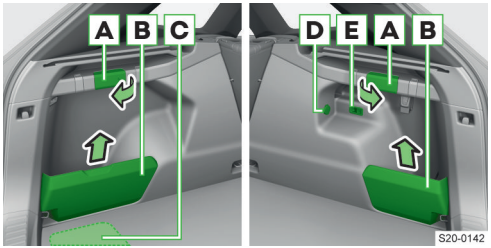
NOTICE

▸ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

Overview



A Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests

B Removable partition of the storage compartment
Max. load 2.5 kg

C Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for the charging cable

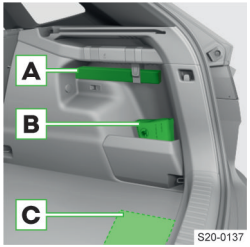
D 12-Volt-power socket

E Trailer hitch switch

Emergency equipment

Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a vehicle without variable loading floor

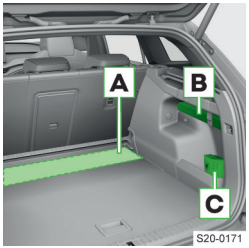


A Placing of the warning triangle

B Positioning of the first-aid kit and the tool kit (depending on equipment)

C Tool kit (depending on equipment)

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment of a vehicle with the variable loading floor



A Tool kit
› To access the vehicle tool kit, remove the variable loading floor.

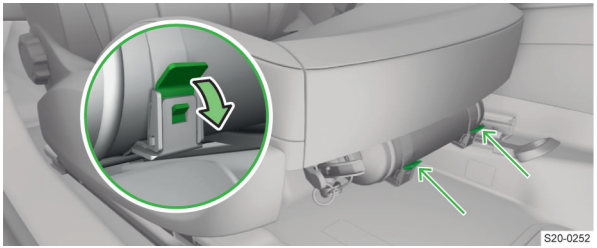
B Placing of the warning triangle

C Placing of the first-aid kit

I To access the vehicle tool kit more easily, fold the rear seat on the right and remove or insert the tool from the area of the rear seats.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest
The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

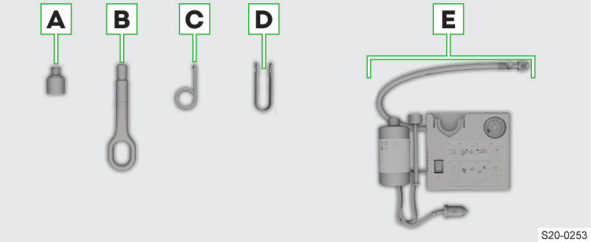
Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat


S20-0252

Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.

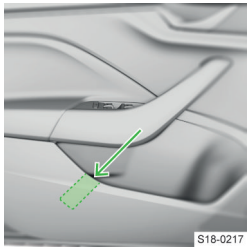


S20-0253

- **A** Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts
- **B** Towing lug
- **C** Bracket for removing the full wheel covers
- **D** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- **E** Breakdown set

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

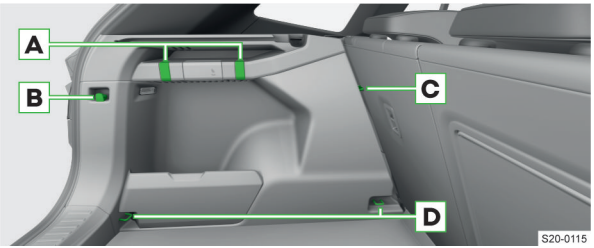
Storage compartment for the reflective vest


S18-0217

Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Vehicle without variable loading floor



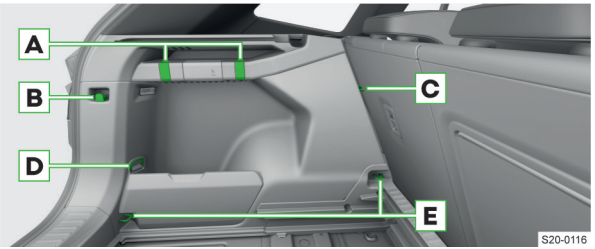
A Fold-out bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Fastener for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

Vehicle with variable loading floor



A Fold-out bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

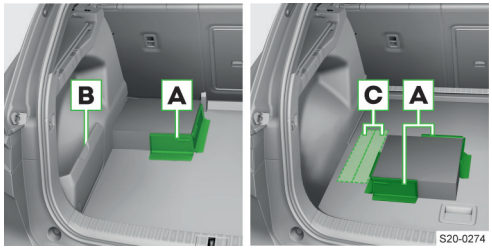
B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Fastener for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

E Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 75 kg

Other fasteners



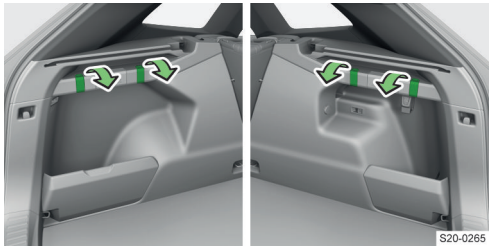
Vehicle without the variable loading floor / with the variable loading floor

A Cargo-Element
Max. load 8 kg
› Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

B Stowing compartment for Cargo-Element in the storage compartment

C Stowing compartment for the Cargo-Elements under the variable loading floor

Bag hooks in the boot

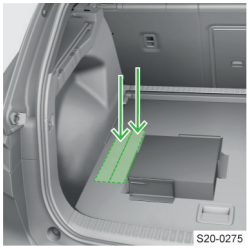


The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot

The maximum load for the Cargo element is 8 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage compartment

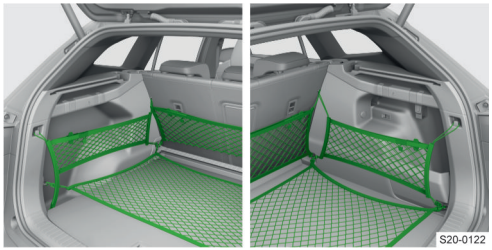


A storage compartment for the Cargo elements is located under the variable loading floor.

The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview

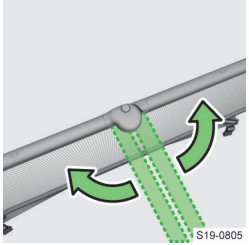


The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

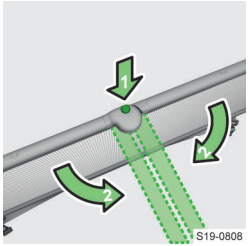
Net partition

Attach the net partition

Unfolding/folding



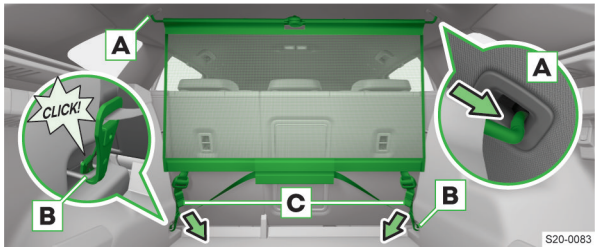
› Open the arms of the cross bar until you hear the locking button audibly click into place.



› Press the safety button and fold the arms of the crossbar together.

ⓘ The folded mesh partition can be stowed under the variable loading floor.

Attach at the back



- Remove the roll-up cover or fold up the rear seat backrests.
- First insert the crossbar into the mount A on one side and push it forwards.
- Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
- Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
- Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten in the front
The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening
Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

Double-sided floor covering

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Extending

- Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting

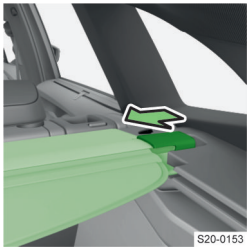
› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift it in the rear area.

› Insert the cover into the recesses in the panel under the loading floor.

› Fold the free part of the cover forwards with the handle.

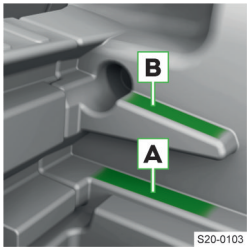
Variable loading floor in the boot

Setting the position

The variable loading floor can only be adjusted in the front area.

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

› Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.



› To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on space B.
› To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.

› Press the variable loading floor forward as far as it can go and place it.

Removing and inserting

› Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.
› Insertion takes place in reverse order.

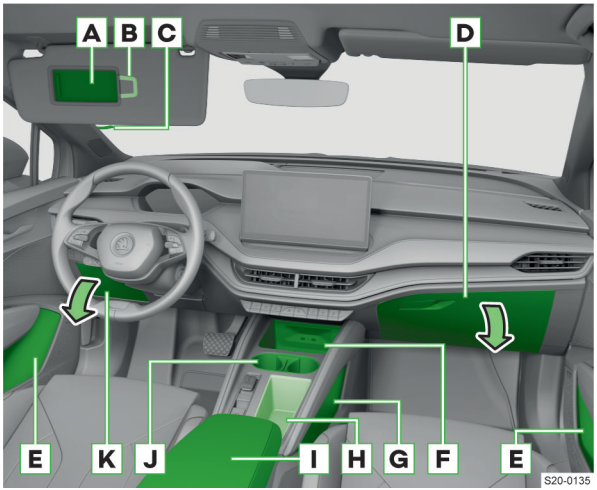
Organiser under the variable loading floor

Charging cable pocket

The maximum load for the pocket is 3 kg.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Car park ticket holder

D Storage tray
Max. load 3 kg
In the compartment, there is a card holder, a pen holder and a storage compartment for coins.
› Pull the handle to open the compartment.

E Storage tray
- Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
- Storage compartment for the waste container
- Storage compartment for the reflective vest

F Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Phonebox
- USB-connections

The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

G Storage tray

H Storage tray

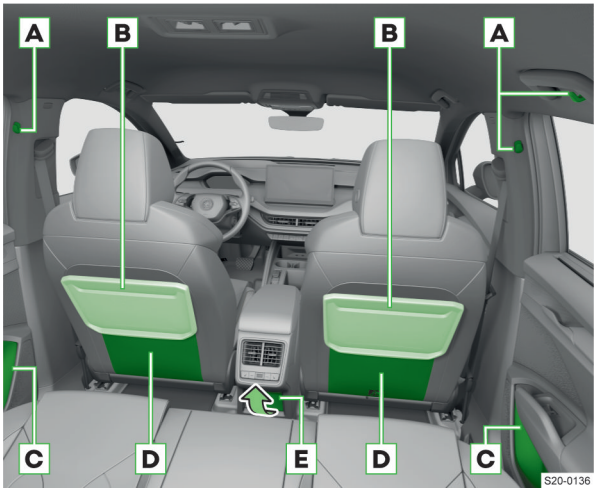
I Openable armrest with storage compartment
In the compartment there is a storage compartment for the tablet, a bottle rack with a content of max. 0.5 l and a removable compartment.
The removable compartment can be stowed away in the rear area of the storage compartment G .

J Cup holder

K Storage tray
Max. load 0.25 kg
A card holder is located in the compartment.
› To open, press the button.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Storage tray
- ▶ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
- ▶ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

D Storage pocket
- ▶ Telephone pocket

E Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- ▶ 230 volt socket and USB connections

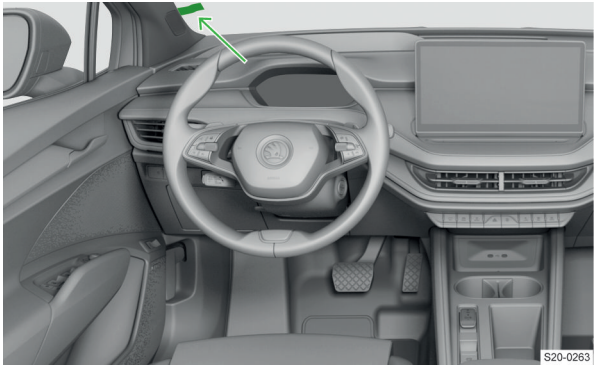
  The USB connections are for charging only.
- ▶ USB-connections

  The USB connections are for charging only.

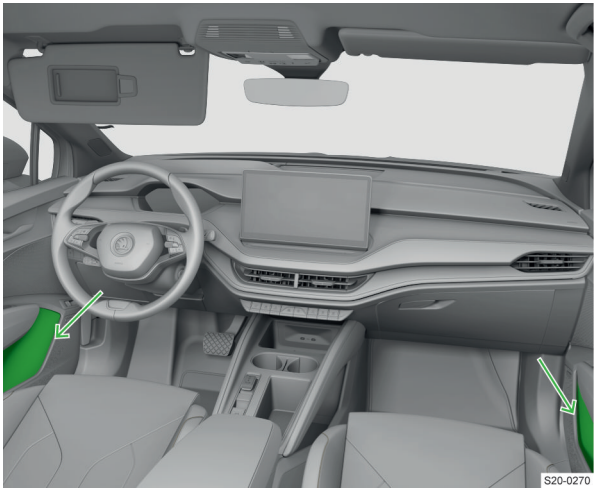
⚠ **WARNING**
- ▶ Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- ▶ Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Storage pocket for phone

Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door

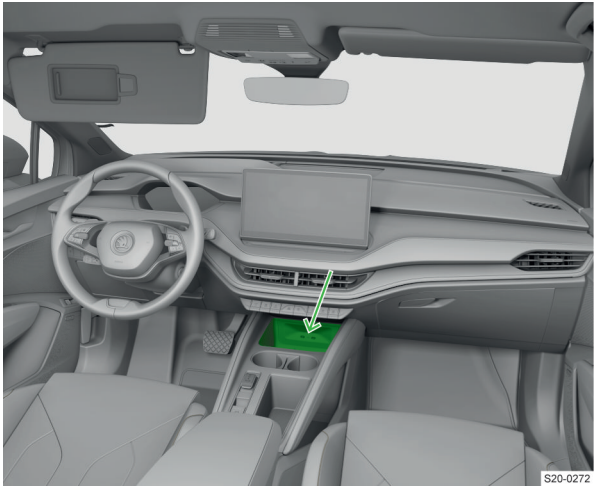


The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door

The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

USB-connections



The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

The USB connections are for charging only.

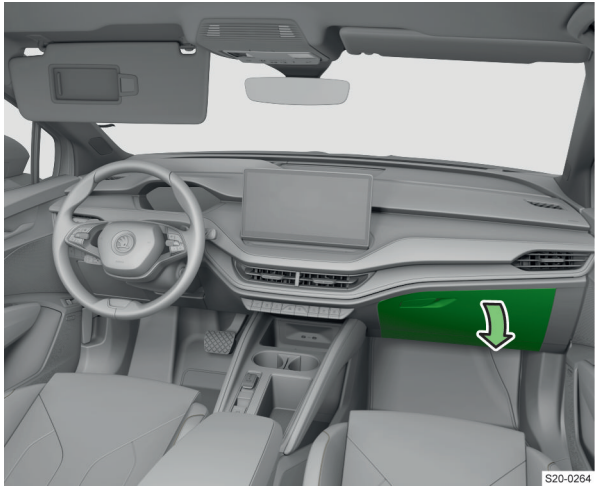
Hook on the centre body pillar

The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

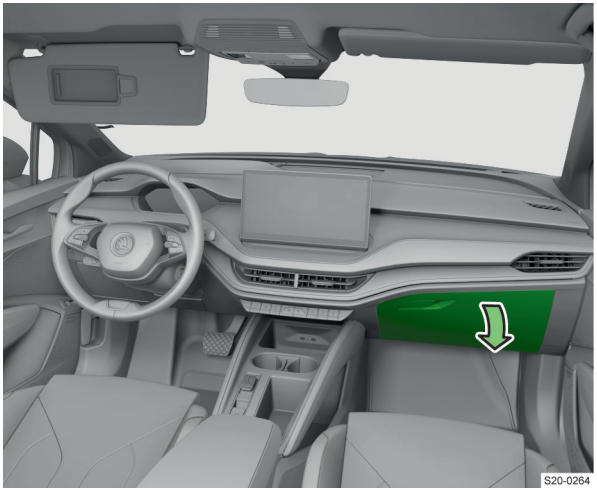
⚠ **WARNING**

- Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

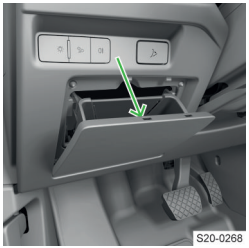
Pen holder



Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card



Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!
- In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

CAUTION
Risk of burns during charging.
- The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Phonebox functions
- Wireless charging of phones.
- Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front. The storage compartment for the telephone is on the driver's side.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 157x80 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging Indicator
The state of charge is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.
- White - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected and is charging.
- Grey - the phone is not in the storage compartment/does not support wireless charging/is fully charged.
- Red - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected, but cannot be charged.
- No icon displayed - the function is not available.

Recommendations for optimal function
- The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- Insert the phone without the protective case.
- Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

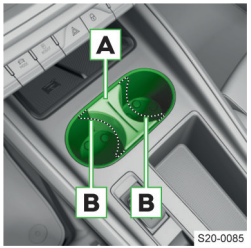
A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

- Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

Cup holder at the front



A Adjustable part with map holder

B End positions of the adjustable part

A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

NOTICE

- Insert the adjustable part so that the side grooves are not visible.

Rear cup holder

› To open it, open the lid.

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

- Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the electrical system and the panels from spilled drinks.

Cup holder Easy Open

A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

Ashtray

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burning or fire!
▸ Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.

Operation

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

Open the ashtray

Remove the lid

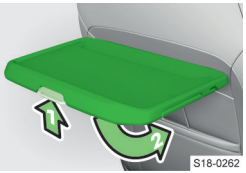
Folding table

Operation

Fold up the table

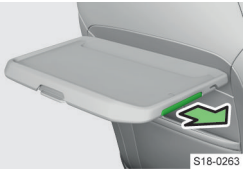
› Press the safety button and fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



› Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder



The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

Ceiling

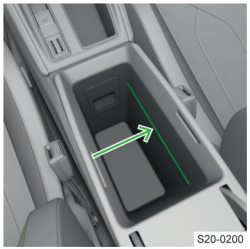
Removing and inserting

The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations:

▸ On the guide rods of the front headrests
▸ In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Storage compartment for the tablet

Overview



› Secure the tablet with the rubber band.

12-Volt power socket

Operating conditions

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!
- Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- Switch off the loads before switching the ignition on or off.

230-Volt power socket

Functionality

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.
- Switch off the loads before switching the ignition on or off.

Status display
- Lit up in green - the socket is switched on.
- Blinking green - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off, if a load was connected before the engine was switched off.

The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red
The socket is turned off e.g. for the following reasons:
- Excessive current
- Low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery
- Overheating of the socket

› If the reasons given above no longer exist and the socket is not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected load from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

230 volt socket and USB connections

The USB connections are for charging only.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Technical data

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
An improperly installed or unsuitable tow hitch can damage the high-voltage components of the vehicle in an accident and thus deepen the consequences of the accident or cause fatal injuries.

- Due to the specific structure of the vehicles with high-voltage batteries, we recommend using only the original ŠKODA tow hitch. With these accessories, ŠKODA stands for safety, reliability and suitability for this vehicle type.
- We recommend that all related assembly work be carried out by ŠKODA service partners.

Applies to natural gas vehicles.

⚠ **WARNING**

An improperly installed or unsuitable tow hitch can damage the natural gas reservoir of the vehicle in an accident and thus deepen the consequences of the accident or cause fatal injuries.

- Due to the specific structure of the vehicles with natural gas reservoirs, we recommend using only the original ŠKODA tow hitch. With these accessories, ŠKODA stands for safety, reliability and suitability for this vehicle type.
- We recommend that all related assembly work be carried out by ŠKODA service partners.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

- Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

- When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar

› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.

› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
- A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.

› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.

› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

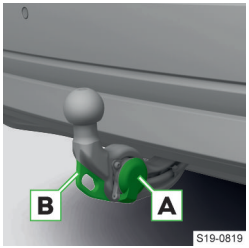
Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
▸ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling
› Swing out the tow bar.
› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.
› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling
Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

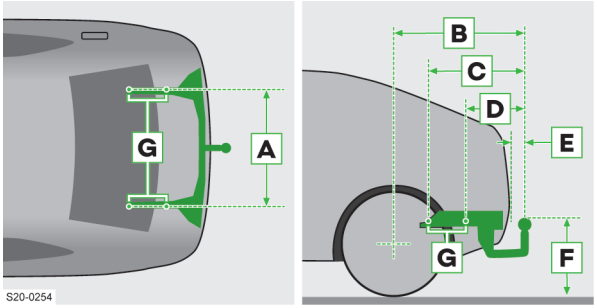
Tow bar not locked

illuminates

› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



A Distance of the attachment points

B Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head

C Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head

D Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head

E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)

F Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the standard ECE-55)

G Fastening points on the body

In mm	
A	994
B	1098
C	630
D	410
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories
When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball head of the towing hitch is 70 cm, the permissible total weight of the accessories including their load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
- ▶ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!
- ▶ When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals
Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service
A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Show service appointment
› In infotainment select menu › › › menu item for service.

Resetting information
We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service partner
All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts
We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance

with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories
We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Component protection
Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ **NOTICE**
- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara ® / Suedia / material

ⓘ **NOTICE**
- Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® and Suedia suede seat upholstery.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of fading to the cover fabric!
- If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

ℹ
- During use, the leather and Alcantara®- and Suedia and materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration). This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.

▶ Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the dash panel!
▶ Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna!
▶ Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.
▶ Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the heating system!
▶ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
▶ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the seat belts!
▶ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
▶ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suedia / material
› Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
› Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution [1] and wipe with a dry cloth.
› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When looking after Alcantara®-, Suedia and and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts
› Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows
› Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen
› Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
▶ When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

[1] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.[1)]

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

▶ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▶ Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.

▶ Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.

▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.

▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

▶ Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

▶ Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.

▶ Do not treat matt lacquered parts with polish or hard wax.

▶ Do not polish foils.

▶ We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.

▶ Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.

› Move the windscreen wiper lever to position OFF to adjust.

› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Before driving through a car wash, the following conditions must be met if rolling the vehicle is required:

✓ Ignition on

✓ Selector lever in N mode

✓ Electric parking brake switched off

✓ Auto Hold function deactivated

ⓘ **NOTICE**

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

▶ Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

---

1) A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Wash with a pressure washer

NOTICE

- Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spray distance to the vehicle surface.
- Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts
  - Components of the high-voltage system, for example the charging socket, high-voltage cable etc.
  - Films
  - Lock cylinder
  - Columns on the vehicle
  - Trailer connection
  - Swivelling ball bar
  - Camera lenses and sensors
  - Plastic, chromed and anodised parts

Remove snow and ice

NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Clean the charging cable

WARNING

Risk of electric shock!

- Clean the charging cable only after disconnecting it from the vehicle and from the charging station.

NOTICE

Risk of damaging the charging cable!

- Water must not come in contact with the charging cable.
- Wipe off the charging cable with a dry cloth.
- Use a wipe moistened in detergent-free water for larger amounts of dirt.
- If the charging cable is not used for a long time, clean it before reusing it.

Instructions for cleaning

Notes on the high-voltage system

› Stop the charging process and close the battery charging flap.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Components of the high-voltage system, such as orange cables, must not be damaged.

Handwash

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
› For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.
› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
- Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.

› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

- Sun rays
- moisture
- Air pollution
- Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack

› If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch

› Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper

In the luggage compartment lid

Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

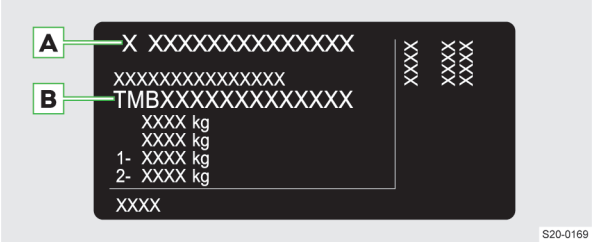
The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption, which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations:

- In the room under the front flap on the right
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

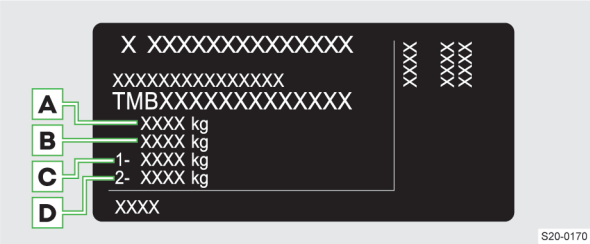
VIN display
The VIN is displayed in the infotainment under the menu item ▦ › 🚗 › 🔧 › Menu item for service.

Engine number
The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Payloads
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

- The weight of the passenger
- The weight of all luggage and other loads
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 255

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This also includes 75 kg as the driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tools.

Operating weight

	Operating weight (kg)
132 kW electric motor	1965
150 kW electric motor	2075

ℹ Ask for the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)
Vehicle height	1616
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1879
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2147
Ground clearance of the vehicle	186
Vehicle length	4649

Engine specifications

132 kW electric motor

Power (kW)	132
Highest torque (Nm)	310/6000
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7

150 kW electric motor

Power (kW)	150
Highest torque (Nm)	310/6000
Maximum speed (km/h)	160
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter called as “EDR”. The purpose of the EDR lies in the data recording during a traffic accident or another extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter called as “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and shortly after the accident. This enables them to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. Whether for instance the affected systems were switched on or off at the corresponding time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive. There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- Lane Assist (Lane Assist).
- Park Assist.
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist).

Under normal driving conditions, data is not recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

For reading the EDR-Data, special equipment is required and the ignition switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53 / EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

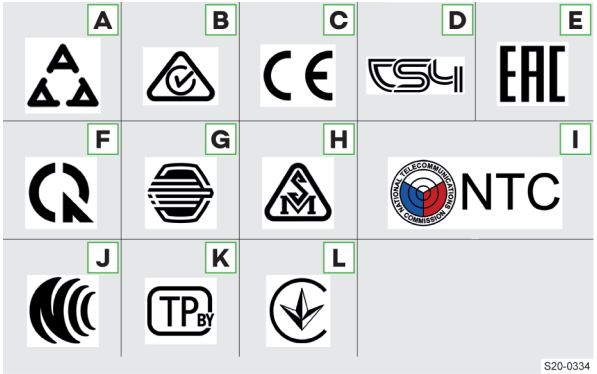
Information about **Directive 2014/53 / EU**on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical regulation on radio equipment, approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of May 25, 2017 No. 355** as well as regarding **declaration of conformity** ,can be viewed on ŠKODA web pages using the following link or by scanning the QR-code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Select Download Declaration of conformity against the desired model, to receive the certificates.

Examples of labelling of radio systems



A Serbia

B Australia and New Zealand

C Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)

D Armenia

E Russia

F Vietnam

G Mongolia

H Moldova

I Philippines

J Taiwan

K Belarus

L Ukraine

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the “Vehicle delivery documentation” chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the “ŠKODA Warranty”), according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services[1]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.

- Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.
- Free repair of the high-voltage battery, if the damage occurs within 8 years or before reaching a mileage of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty.

  A reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery over time is a natural feature of technology and does not constitute a defect within the meaning of the ŠKODA warranty (this is with regards to a natural lock), provided that this value measured by the ŠKODA service partner does not fall below 70% of the total usable capacity before the expiry of 8 years or before the achievement of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever comes first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[1)].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. This also applies to the high-voltage battery and its components. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the fault rectification. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

In the event of a claim under the ŠKODA warranty regarding damage to the high-voltage battery, the capacity of the high-voltage battery after fault rectification is at least 70% of the total usable capacity, and this is in consideration of all relevant factors including the age, condition and the mileage of the vehicle.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

---

1) Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

1) Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. Tuning).
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improper care or unauthorized maintenance.
- Non-observance of instructions in the Owner's Manual or in other factory instructions, including, but not limited to, non-observance of instructions regarding the procedure for charging the high-voltage battery.
- Use of the vehicle as a stationary source of electrical energy or extraction and subsequent use of the high-voltage battery outside the vehicle.
- Exposure of the high-voltage battery to water or other liquids.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left on the road due to an unexpected fault, we can provide services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including the following: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA service partner, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The fault rectification under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The described paint warranty, the warranty against rust penetration and the warranty for the high-voltage battery remain unaffected by the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

ⓘ The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery 213
Charge 213
Checking the condition 213
Discharge protection 213
Disconnecting and connecting 215
Fault 214
Safety 24
see 12 volt vehicle battery 213
12-Volt-vehicle battery 213

A

ABS 166
ACC 172
Automatic stop and start 173
Distance adjustment 174
Interruption of cruise control 175
Accident data recorder 265
Adaptive Cruise Control 172
Adaptive suspension 158
Air conditioning
see Climatronic 88
Airbag 70
Deactivating the airbags 71
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 72
Fault 71
Installation locations 70
Release 70
Safety 70
Alarm system 39
Trailer 40
All-season tyres 224
Ambient lighting 82
Armrest
Front 57
rear 57
Ashtray 249
ASR 166
Assist systems
Driver assist 166
Park Assist 185
Safety 28
Assist systems for emergency situations 184
Auto Hold 165
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 168
Automatic gearbox 156
Automatic recuperation assistant
see Eco Assist 184

B

Background lighting 82
Backrest
Load-through device 57
Battery acid 213
Boot 232
12 volt socket 232

Double-sided floor covering 237
Fasteners 234
Fastening nets 236
Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 232
Net partition 236
roll-up cover 237
Storage compartments 232
Trailer hitch switch 232
Transporting objects safely 27
Variable loading floor 238
Boot lid 48
Automatic locking 48
Contactless operation 50
manual operation 47
Manually unlock 51
to be set to the highest position 49
Troubleshooting 49
Boot storage
see boot lid 47
Brake fluid 162
Safety 23
Brake pads 163
Brakes 162
Bulbs 80

C

Car adaptations
Recommendations 257
Safety 23
Cargo elements 234
Ceiling 250
Central locking 35
SAFE function 35
Central locking button 35
Centre console 15
Charge
low charge level 200
Troubleshooting 200
Charging 195
Charging socket 196
Setting the charging process 200
Charging cable 203
Charging cable type 204
manual release of the charging plug from the charging socket 202
Stowing 232
Charging your phone wirelessly 247
Check the vehicle before your journey 25
Child lock 41
Child seat 64
Fastening using a belt 68
Grouping 65
i-Size 67
ISOFIX 67
Keyword child seat 64
on the passenger seat 64
Recommended child seats 65
Securing children properly 26
TOP TETHER 69
Types of mounting 69
Climatronic 88
set classic air conditioning 90
set smart air conditioning 89
Start the operating menu 89
Comfort flasher 75

Setting 76
COMING HOME 78
Compartments 240, 241
Configuration wizard 102
Control Centre 105
Coolant
Checking 211
Refilling 211
Safety 23
Specification 212
Cooling system 89
Crew Protect Assist
see Proactive occupant protection 182
Cruise control system 171
Cup holder 248
Cybernetic security 124

D

Data connection 152
Daylight running lights 73
DCC 158
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 72
Digital Assistant Laura 106
Digital instrument cluster 95
Distribution of the cargo 159
Door
Opening/closing 41
Drive assistant
see Travel Assist 178
Drive power 98
Driver Alert 183
see fatigue detection assistant 183
Driver's seat 14
Driving data 97
Reset to default 97
DSR 167
Dynamic cornering lights
Activate 77
Deactivating 77
Full LED headlights function 73
Dynamic Light Assist
see Headlight Assist System 79

E

e-sound 165
Earth point 216
Eco Assist 184
Economical driving style 159
EDL 167
Electric parking brake 163
Electric windows 42
Activation 44
Force limiter 42
Operation 43
Troubleshooting 44
Electronic brake force distribution 167
Emergency
Emergency call 30
Using jump start cables 215
What to do after an accident 31
What to do in the event of a fire 31
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 184
Emergency call 30

Emergency equipment 232
Tool kit 233
Engine number 263
Equipment in the boot 232
ESC 166
Exit warning 192
Explanations 11
Exterior
lighting 73
Exterior mirrors 60
Extinguisher 233

F

Fasteners in the boot 234
First aid kit 232
Flooring in the boot 237
Fogged windows 91
Folding table 250
Force limiter 44
Front Assist 168
distance warning system 168
Front flap 210
Front seat
Electrically operated 52
Manually operated 51
Front vehicle area 13
Full LED headlights 73
Fuses 217
Replacing 218

H

Hazard warning light system 75
Head-up display with augmented reality 96
Headlight Assist System 79, 80
Headlights
Full LED 73
Full LED setting 77
Headlight range control 76
Headrests 55
Heated steering wheel 94
Heated windscreen 93
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 167
High beam
Headlight Assist System 79
High-beam
High-beam assist system 78
High-beam assist system 78, 79
High-voltage battery 193
Charging 197
High-voltage system 193
Safety 24
Hill Hold Control 167
HOME Menu 100
Hook
in interior 241
in the luggage compartment 234

I

i-Size 67
Ice scraper 14
Indicator lights
Overview 17
Infotainment screen 103

Infotainment settings 102
Instrument cluster
digital 95
Interior
lighting 81
Interior fittings
230 volt socket 241
Car park ticket holder 240
Coat hook 241
Glasses compartment 240
Make up mirror 240
Map pockets 241
Storage compartments 240, 241
Ticket holder 240
Interior lighting 81, 82
Ambient lighting 82
Operation 81
Interior mirror 60
ISOFIX 69
eyelets 69
Placement on the seat 67

J

Jump start cables 216

K

Key 33
Key switch for airbag deactivation 72
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 73
Keyboard 104
Keyless locking (KESSY) 37

L

Lane Assist 177
see Lane Assist 177
Lane change assist system
siehe Side Assist 179
LEAVING HOME 78
Lever
Headlight Assist System 80
High-beam assist system 79
Main beam 74
Turn signal 75
Windscreen wipers and washers 84
Liability for defects
see warranty 267
Light 73
Automatically switch on and switch off 73, 76
Bad weather light 75
Change bulbs 80
Changing bulbs 80
Clean headlights 85
Daylight running lights 73
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 77
Fog light 75
Full LED headlights 73
Hazard warning light system 75
Headlamp flasher 74
Headlight Assist System 79
Headlight range adjustment of headlights 76
High-beam assist system 78
Indicator light 77
Low beam 76
Main beam 74

Operation 74
Parking light 76
Side light 76
Troubleshooting 77
Turn signal 75
Light Assist
see high beam assist system 78
Light switch 74
Lightbulbs
Parking light - Changing 81
Lighting
Ambient lighting 82
interior 81
outer 73
Lighting range 76
Limiter
see speed limiter 170
Load-through device 57
Lock 35
Locking elements
in dash panel 218
space under the front flap 220
Low beam 73

M

Main beam 74
MATRIX headlights
see Headlight Assist System 79
MCB 167
Media 119
Memory function of the seat 52
MENU menu 101
Mileage 98
Mirror
see exterior mirror 60
Mirrors
see interior rear-view mirror 60
Mobile device management 125
MSR 166
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 167

N

Navigation 141
Net partition 236
Nets 236

O

Online Services
Availability of the services 151
Personal data 154
privacy 154
ŠKODA Connect 151
ŠKODA Connect application 152
User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services 153
Operating the vehicle
Use jump start cables 215

P

Park Assist systems 185
Parking
Parking aid 185
Rear Traffic Alert 191

Reversing camera 187
Stop the vehicle safely! 29
Parking aid 185, 186
Parking brake 163
see electric parking brake 163
Parking light 76
ParkPilot
see parking aid 185
Passenger seat 15
Pedestrian recognition 169
Personal data 266
Phonebox 247
Power steering 59
Practical equipment
12 volt socket 232, 251
230 volt socket 251
Ashtray 249
Cup holder 248
Folding table 250
Storage compartment for the tablet 250
Storage compartment for the umbrella 246
Predictive cruise control 173
Preferred functions 101

R

Radio
DAB radio 112
FM Radio 108
WEB radio and podcasts 114
Radio systems in the vehicle 266
Rear fog light 75
rear 75
Rear seats
Folding down 54
Rear Traffic Alert 191
Rear vehicle area 14
Rear view camera 187
Rear View Camera
Operation 188
Recirculated air mode 89
Recuperation 158
Refilling
Coolant 211
Reflective vest 232
Release 35
Restarting the Infotainment system 102
Rights arising from defective performance
see warranty 267
Roll-up boot cover 237
Roof rack 252
Roof load 252
safe driving 28

S

Safe driving 28
SAFE function 35
Safety
Before your journey 22
Car adaptations 23
Child seat 26
Driving through water 28
Emergency call 30
Exiting the vehicle 29
New brake pads 22

New tyres 22
safe driving 28
Sensors and cameras 23
sit properly 25
Transport cargo and objects 27
Transporting children 26
Warning lights 28
Weather conditions 29
Webbing route 26
What to do after an accident 31
What to do in the event of a fire 31
SEAL tyres 225
Seat belts 62
Adjusting the height 63
Automatic belt retractor 62
Belt tensioners 62
Blocked strap 64
correct arrangement 26
Fastening and unfastening 63
Reversible belt tensioner 62
Status display 62
Seat heating 93
Seat massage function 54
Seats 51
Folding down 54
Heating 93
ISOFIX 69
Memory function of the seat 52
sit safely 25
TOP TETHER 69
Service events 257
Interval 257
Resetting information 257
Show service appointment 257
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 87
Service work 257
SET button 99
Set tyre pressure values 230
Side Assist 179, 180
Side light
see Parking light 76
Sliding/tilting roof 44
electric operation of the sun blinds 45
Operation 45
SmartLink 135
Android Auto 137
Apple CarPlay 138
MirrorLink 140
Snow chains 224
Sockets
12-volt socket 251
230-volt socket 251
safety 25
Sound 103
Space under the front flap 16
Open bonnet 210
Safety 23
Speed limiter 170
Indicator light 170
Stand-by air conditioning 92
Setting the departure time 92
Steering column lock 59
Steering wheel 58
Buttons/dial: 58
correct position 26
Dials/buttons 95

Heating 94
Storage 240, 241
Sun protection 47
electric operation of the sun blinds 45
Operation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 46
Surround View
see Top View 189
Switching low beam on automatically 73
System 102

T

Technical data 263
Technical specifications
Dimensions 265
Telephone 127
Tips for economical driving 159
Tool 233
TOP TETHER 69
eyelets 69
Top View 189
Topping up
Windscreen washer fluid 86
Tow hitch 252
Troubleshooting 255
Vertical load 255
Tow rope 161
Towing a trailer 159
Safety 28
Trailer Stability Assist 167
Towing lug 160
Towing the vehicle 160
Traffic accident
Data recorder 265
Emergency call 30
What to do after an accident 31
Traffic Sign Recognition 181
Trailer 159
Alarm system 40
Coupling and uncoupling 254
Permissible load 160
safe driving 28
Swing out the tow bar and back in 253
Trailer Stability Assist 167
Transport
Roof rack 252
Tow hitch 252
Transporting objects safely 27
Travel Assist 178
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 167
Turn signal 75
Type plate 263
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Tyres 222–224
Breakdown set 227
Labelling overview 222
Pressure 229, 230
Snow chains 224
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Wear indicator 222

U

Umbrella 246
Universal charging cable 204

Control box 206
Replace replaceable cable 207
Troubleshooting 208
Unlock 37
Updating infotainment 102
USB 240, 241

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 238
Vehicle cleaning
Exterior 260
Instructions for cleaning the interior 259
Instructions for cleaning the outer area 261
Interior 258
Vehicle dimensions 265
Vehicle driving mode 157
Comfort 157
Eco 157
Individual 157
Normal 157
Sport 157
Vehicle height 265
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 263
Vehicle length 265
Vehicle status 99
Vehicle width 265
Vest
see reflective vest 232
VIN
see vehicle identification number 263
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 95
Voice control 106

W

Warning lights
Foreword 17
Warning triangle 232
Warranty 267
Mobility warranty 269
Optional Extended Warranty 269
Rights arising from defective performance 267
Warranty for new cars 267
Weight 263
Wheels 222
Breakdown 223
Change 225, 226
Cover caps for the screws 231
Full wheel covers 231
Overview of tyre labelling 222
Pressure change 223
Tyre pressure 229, 230
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Wear indicator 222
Wi-Fi 133
Window 42
heating 93
Windscreen washer fluid
How is the washer fluid refilled? 86
Level too low 87
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 84
Windscreen wiper and washer
Refill windscreen washer fluid 86

Windscreen washer fluid level too low 87
Windscreen wipers and washers 84
automatic rear window wiping 85
automatic wiping 86
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 87
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 87
Winter tyres 224

X

XDL + 167